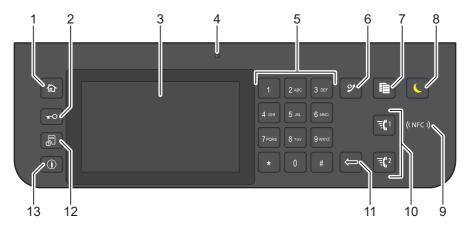
Using Your Printer

13 Operator Panel	109
14 Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool	117
15 Understanding the Tool Box Menus	185
16 Understanding the Printer Menus	213
17 Print Media Guidelines	293
18 Loading Print Media	299

Operator Panel

About the Operator Panel

The operator panel has a touch panel, a status LED, control buttons, and a number pad, which allows you to control the printer.



- (Home) button
 - Moves to the **Home** screen.
- **■O** (Login/Logout) button
 - Logs out if pressed while the user is logged in.
- 3 Touch Panel
 - Specifies the settings by directly tapping the screen.
 - Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
- 4 Status LED (Ready / Error)
 - Shows a green light when the printer is ready and a blinking green light when data is being received.
 - Shows an amber light when an error occurs and a blinking amber light when an unrecoverable print error occurs.
- 5 Number Pad
 - Enters numbers and characters.
- (Redial / Pause) button
 - Re-dials a telephone number.
 - Inserts a pause into a telephone number.
- 7 **(Copy)** button
 - Starts copying the document. Effective only from the Home screen while you are logged in to the printer.
- (Power Saver) button
 - Enters or exits the Power Saver mode. When the printer is not used for a while, it enters the Power Saver mode to reduce power consumption. When the Power Saver mode is active, the (Power Saver) button blinks.

- ((NFC)) (NFC) reader
 - Starts NFC communication between the tapping device/card and the printer when the device/card is waved over the reader.
- ₹[1/ ₹[2 (Quick Dial 1 / Quick Dial 2) button 10
 - Starts faxing the document to the number registered as "001" and "002" respectively of the FAX Speed Dial. Effective only when the **Home** screen is displayed.
- (Delete) button
 - Deletes numbers and characters.
- [Job Status] button
 - Moves to the Job Status screen. From this screen, you can check or cancel active jobs.
- (Information) button
 - Moves to the Information screen. You can access various information and settings menu, check consumable levels and network status, and print various types of reports and lists.
- NOTE: Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to select OK to save the current entry or setting.

Basic Operations on the Touch Panel

You can operate the touch panel as with a smart phone or a tablet.

To Select the Item on the Screen

Tap the item.



To Scroll the Screen or the Listed Items

Swipe the screen by dragging your finger on the screen.



To scroll faster, flick the screen.





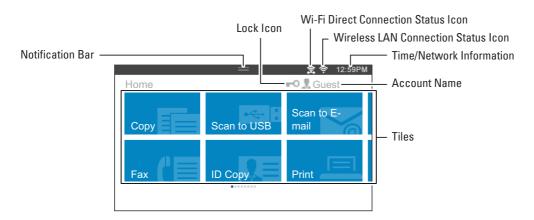
NOTE: You cannot swipe or flick on some screens depending on the screen design and specifications. In this case, operate by tapping the buttons shown on the screen.

About the Home Screen

This section describes the fields and buttons on the **Home** screen which is displayed by pressing the (Home) button while the user is logged in to the printer. The Home screen is the default screen that appears when the printer is turned on.



NOTE: To display the Home screen, the user must be registered beforehand and log in to the printer. For more information, see "User Authentication."



Notification Bar

Displays the status of the printer when the handle is dragged down. To close, drag up the handle.

You can adjust the screen brightness, see the toner information, or monitor the jobs currently progressing. Warnings are displayed in this area, too.

To adjust the screen brightness, drag the slider in Screen Brightness.

To see the Toner Information, tap Supplies.

The information of the toner is displayed with one toner at a time.

To see the information of other toners, swipe the screen.

Lock Icon

Shows that any of the functions controlled by the Function Enabled setting has been enabled. While the Lock icon is displayed on the left to the account name, you can access the password-locked functions without entering the

Wi-Fi Direct Connection Status Icon

Displays the Wi-Fi Direct connection status. This icon is displayed only when Wi-Fi Direct is enabled.

Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon

Displays the intensity of wireless signal when the wireless adapter is connected to the printer.

Time/Network Information

Displays the current time or the network information (IPv4 address or host name).

Account Name

Displays the name of the user currently logging in to the printer.

Tiles

Displays the tiles of the functions you can select from.

When the tile color is pale and disabled, you cannot select the function.

When the Lock icon is displayed on the tile, the function is controlled by the Function Enabled setting and you will need to enter the password to enable the function.

For more information about Function Enabled, see "Function Enabled."

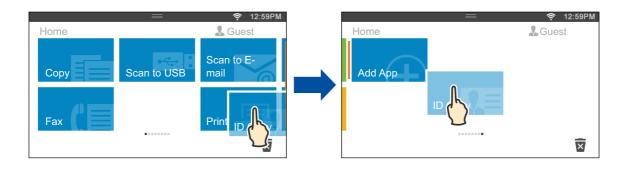
Moving, Adding or Deleting the Tiles

To Move the Tiles

Tap and hold the tile you want to move, and drag it to the desired place.

The short orange bar appears between the tiles to show the nearest drop point when you are dragging the tile.

You can move the tile between pages as well.



To Add the Tiles

Find the Add App tile in the last page of the Home screen, and tap it.

The Apps List screen appears.

Tap the tile you want to add to the Home screen.

To Delete the Tiles

Tap and hold the tile you want to delete.

appears. Drag the tile to the icon.



The confirmation screen is displayed.

Tap OK to delete the tile.

Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel

During operations, a keyboard for entering text sometimes appears. The following describes how to enter text.



You can enter the following characters: numbers, alphabets, and symbols.

Item	Description
Entering alphabets	To enter uppercase letters, tap $ $
Entering numbers and symbols	Tap 2123 .
Entering a space	Тар .
Deleting characters	Tap 🗶 to delete one character at a time.

To Change the Keyboard Layout

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Language Settings.
- 3 Tap Keyboard Layout.
- **4** Tap the desired keyboard layout.
- **5** Tap OK.

Using the Number Pad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you enter fax number directly.



Number Pad Numbers

1	
2	
3	
4	_
5	
6	
7	
8	_
9	_
0	
*	
#	

Changing Numbers or Names

If you make a mistake while entering a number, press the (Delete) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the (Redial/Pause) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Printing a Panel Settings Report

The panel settings report shows current settings for the printer menus. For details about how to print a panel settings report, see "Report / List."

Changing the Language

To change the language used on the touch panel:

When Using the Operator Panel

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Language Settings.
- 3 Tap Panel Language.
- **4** Tap **▼** until the desired language appears, and then tap the desired language.
- **5** Tap OK.

When Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer → Tool Box.
 - **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The Tool Box opens.

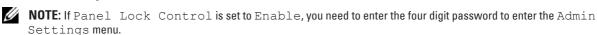
- 2 Click the Printer Maintenance tab.
- 3 Select Panel Language from the list at the left side of the page.

The Panel Language page appears.

4 Select the desired language from Panel Language, and then click Apply New Settings.

Setting the Power Saver Timer Option

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer enters the power saver mode when the printer is not used for a certain period of time.



To set the power saver timer:

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap System Settings.
- 4 Tap General.
- 5 Tap Power Saver Timer.
- 6 Tap Sleep or Deep Sleep.
- 7 Tap or +, or use the number pad to enter the desired value.

You can specify from 1 to 30 minutes for Sleep or 1 to 30 minutes for Deep Sleep.

8 Tap OK.

About the Concurrent Jobs Feature

This feature enables you to start a concurrent job while a fax job is running. This is done by temporarily displaying the Home screen and switching to a different function that can be run concurrently such as copy or scan.

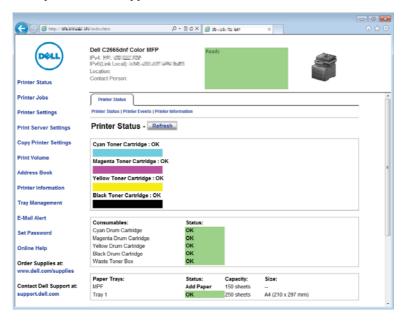
- 1 While the printer is sending or receiving a fax, press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Copy or Scan.
- **3** After setting the copy or scan settings, tap OK. For details about Copy or Scan, see "Copying" or "Scanning."

Dell[™] Printer Configuration Web Tool

Overview

NOTE: This web tool is available only when the printer is connected to a network using an Ethernet cable or the wireless printer

One of the features of the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool is E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.



To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all the printers in your area, use the Printer Information feature in the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can copy the printer settings to one or all printers on the network using your web browser.

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Follow the procedures below to configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the operator panel before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.



NOTE: The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool pages may be displayed unreadable if the pages were configured by the language different from the language of your web browser.

Setting Up From Web Browser

For Internet Explorer®

Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select Internet Options from Tools on the menu bar.
- **2** Select Languages in the General tab.
- 3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the Language list.

For example:

- Italian (Italy) [it-IT]
- Spanish (Traditional Sort) [es-ES tradnl]
- Germany [de-DE]
- French (France) [fr-FR]
- English (United States) [en-US]
- Danish [da-DK]
- Dutch (Netherlands) [nl-NL]
- Norwegian (Bokmal) [no]
- Swedish [sv-SE]

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

- 1 Select Internet Options from the Tools menu.
- 2 Click LAN Settings under Local Area Network (LAN) Settings in the Connections tab.
- **3** Do either of the following:
 - Clear the Use a proxy server for your LAN check box under Proxy server.
 - Click Advanced, and then specify the IP address of the printer in the Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with field under Exceptions.

For Firefox 2.0 or Later

Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select Options from the Tools menu.
- 2 Click Advanced.
- **3** If you are using Firefox 2.0, click Choose in the General tab. If you are using Firefox 3.0, click Choose in the Content tab.

- 4 Specify the display language in order of preference in the Languages in order of preference list menu.
 - For example:
 - English [en] or English/United States [en-us]
 - Italian [it]
 - Spanish [es]
 - German [de]
 - French [fr]
 - Dutch [nl]
 - Norwegian [no]
 - Swedish [sv]
 - Danish [da]

Setting the IP Address of the Printer to Non-Proxy

- 1 Select Options from the Tools menu.
- 2 Click Advanced tab.
- **3** Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.
- 4 Click Connection → Settings.
- **5** If you are using Firefox 2.0, do one of the following:
 - Select the Direct connection to the Internet check box.
 - Select the Auto-detect proxy settings for this network check box.
 - Select the Manual proxy configuration check box, and then enter the IP address of the printer in the No Proxy for edit box.
 - Select the Automatic proxy configuration URL check box.

If you are using Firefox 3.0, do one of the following:

- Select the No Proxy check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.
- Select the Auto-detect proxy settings for this network check box.
- Select the Manual proxy configuration check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of the printer in the No Proxy for edit box.
- Select the Automatic proxy configuration URL check box.

Setting Up From Operator Panel

You can launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool only when the operator panel setting is set to Enable. Confirm the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus."

Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.



If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the TCP/IP Settings page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Overview of the Menu Items

The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** consists of the following menus:

- Printer Status
- Printer Jobs
- Printer Settings
- Print Server Settings
- Copy Printer Settings
- Print Volume
- Address Book
- Printer Information
- Tray Management
- E-Mail Alert
- Set Password
- Online Help
- Order Supplies at:
- Contact Dell Support at:

Printer Status

Use the Printer Status menu to get immediate feedback on the printer supply status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the order supplies link on the first screen to order a new toner cartridge.

Printer Jobs

Use the Printer Jobs menu to contain information on the Job List page and Completed Jobs page.

These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Printer Settings

Use the Printer Settings menu to change the printer settings and to view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Use the Print Server Settings menu to change the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communications.

Copy Printer Settings

Use the Copy Printer Settings menu to copy the printer settings to another printer or printers on the network by typing the IP address of each printer.



NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Print Volume

Use the Print Volume menu to check the history of printing, such as paper usage, the types of jobs being printed, limit to which users can use the color mode, and the maximum number of pages they can print.

Address Book

Use the Address Book menu to view or edit the e-mail address, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.



NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Printer Information

Use the Printer Information menu to get information on service calls, inventory reports, or the status of current memory and engine code levels.

Tray Management

Use the Tray Management menu to get information about the paper type and size for each tray.

E-Mail Alert

Use the E-Mail Alert menu to receive e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention. Job history reports, job statistics reports, and print volume reports can also be received by e-mail. To receive alerts or reports, specify your email address or the e-mail address of the key operator in the E-Mail Alert menu. Set E-mail Alert also when using the Scan to E-mail or forwarding fax to e-mail feature.

Set Password

Use the Set Password menu to lock the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings that you have selected.



NOTE: You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click Online Help to visit the Dell Support website.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

dell.com/support

Page Display Format

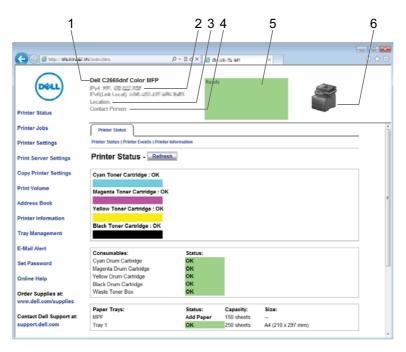
The layout of the page is divided into three sections listed below:

- Top Frame
- Left Frame
- Right Frame

Top Frame

The top frame is located at the top of all pages. When the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.

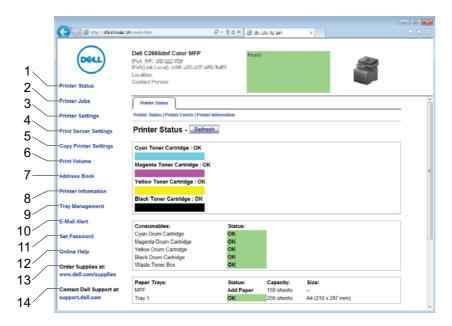


1	Dell C2665dnf Color MFP	Displays the product name of the printer.	
2	IPv4	Displays the IP address of the printer.	
	IPv6		
3	Location	Displays location of the printer. The location can be changed in the Basic Information section on the Print Server Settings page.	
4	Contact Person	Displays the name of the printer administrator. The name can be changed in the Basic Information section on the Print Server Settings page.	
5	Event Panel	Displays the indicator for the condition of the printer.	
6	Machine image	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The Printer Status menu appears in the right frame when you click on the image.	

Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all the pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.

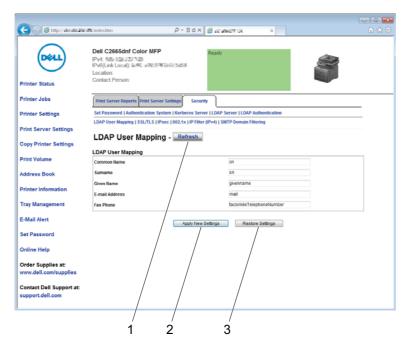


1	Printer Status	Links to the Printer Status menu.
2	Printer Jobs	Links to the Printer Jobs menu.
3	Printer Settings	Links to the Printer Settings Report menu.
4	Print Server Settings	Links to the Print Server Reports menu.
5	Copy Printer Settings	Links to the Copy Printer Settings menu.
6	Print Volume	Links to the Print Volume menu.
7	Address Book	Links to the E-Mail Address menu.
8	Printer Information	Links to the Printer Status menu.
9	Tray Management	Links to the Tray Management menu.
10	E-Mail Alert	Links to the Print Server Settings menu.
11	Set Password	Links to the Security menu.
12	Online Help	Links to the Dell Support website.
13	Order Supplies at:	Links to the Dell web page.
14	Contact Dell Support at:	Links to the Dell support page web address: http://dell.com/support

Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all the pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items."

Buttons in the Right Frame



1	Refresh Button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	Apply New Settings Button	Submits new settings made on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	Restore Settings Button	Restores the old settings that existed before any changes were made. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Type a user name and password for the printer administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is admin, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the Set Password page in the Security menu. The user name cannot be changed. See "Set Password" for more information.

Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"
		"Printer Events"
		"Printer Information"
"Printer Jobs"	"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"
		"Completed Jobs"

"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"	"Menu Settings"	
		"Reports"	
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"	
		"Network Settings"	
		"USB Settings"	
		"PCL Settings"	
		"PS Settings"	
		"PDF Settings"	
		"Secure Settings"	
		"Copy Defaults"	
		"Copy Color Balance"	
		"Copy Settings"	
		"Fax Defaults"	
		"Fax Settings"	
		"Scan Defaults"	
		"USB Direct Print Defaults"	
		"MIFARE Customized Card"	
	"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"	
		"Adjust Transfer Belt Unit"	
		"Adjust 2nd BTR"	
		"Adjust Fusing Unit"	
		"Auto Registration Adjustment"	
		"Color Registration Adjustments"	
		"Reset Defaults"	
		"Initialize PrintMeter"	
		"Storage" ^{*1}	
		"Non-Dell Toner"	
		"Adjust Altitude"	
		"Clock Settings"	
		"Web Link Customization"	

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"	
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"	
	"Print Server Settings"	"Basic Information"	
		"Port Settings"	
		"TCP/IP"	
		"SMB"	
		"E-Mail Alert"	
		"Bonjour (mDNS)"	
		"SNMP"	
		"Scan to PC"	
		"SNTP"	
		"AirPrint"	
		"Google Cloud Print"	
		"Dell Document Hub"	
		"Proxy Server"	
		"Wireless LAN" ^{*2}	
		"Wi-Fi Direct"	
		"Reset Print Server"	
"Print Server Settings"	"Security"	"Set Password"	
		"Authentication System"	
		"Kerberos Server"	
		"LDAP Server"	
		"LDAP Authentication"	
		"LDAP User Mapping"	
		"SSL/TLS"	
		"IPsec"	
		"802.1x"*3	
		"IP Filter (IPv4)"	
		"SMTP Domain Filtering"	
"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"	"Copy Printer Settings"	
		"Copy Printer Settings Report"	
"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"	"Print Volume"	
		"Dell ColorTrack"	
"Address Book"	"E-Mail Address"	"E-Mail Address"	
		"E-Mail Group"	
		"Default Setup"	
	"Server Address"	"Server Address"	
	"Phone Book"	"FAX Speed Dial"	
		"FAX Group"	

- *1 This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.
- $^{\ast 2}$ $\,$ This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.
- *3 This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.

Printer Status

Use the Printer Status menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer. The following pages are displayed in the Printer Status menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables, trays, and covers.

Cyan Toner Cartridge Magenta Toner Cartridge Yellow Toner Cartridge		OK	Indicates that there is enough amount of toner for use.
		Replace Soon	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced soon.
		Replace Now	Indicates that the toner needs to be replaced now.
Black Toner Cartri	dge		
Consumables	Status	OK	Indicates that the status of the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box is OK for use.
		Replace Soon	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced soon.
		Replace Now	Indicates that the drum cartridge and/or waste toner box needs to be replaced now.
Paper Trays	Status	OK	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
	Size		Displays the size of paper in the tray.
Output Tray	Status	OK	Indicates that the tray is available.
		Full	Indicates that the tray is not available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Cover	Status	Closed	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. Color Laser is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When faults occur, such as Out of Paper or Cover is open, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the Printer Events page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where a fault occurred.	
Details	Displays the details of the fault.	

Printer Information

Purpose:

To verify the printer details such as the hardware configuration and software version. This page can also be displayed by clicking on the **Printer Information** tab in the left frame.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number		Displays Dell service tag number.
Express Service Code		Displays Dell express service code.
Asset Tag Number		Displays the asset tag number of the printer.
Printer Serial Number		Displays the serial number of the printer.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	Firmware Version	Displays the revision date (revision level).

Printer Jobs

The Printer Jobs menu contains information on the Job List and Completed Jobs pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the jobs that are being processed. Click the Refresh button to update the screen.

ID	Displays the job ID.	
Job Name	Displays the file name of the job being processed.	
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.	
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.	
Job Status	Displays the status of the job being processed.	
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.	
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.	
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.	

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to the last 20 jobs are displayed. Click the Refresh button to update the screen. Values:

ID	Displays the job ID.	
Job Name	Displays the file name of the completed job.	
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.	
Host Name	Displays the name of the host computer.	
Output Result	Displays the status of the completed job.	
Job Type	Displays the type of the job.	
Impression Number	Displays the total number of pages for the job.	
No. of Sheets	Displays the total number of sheets for the job.	
Host I/F	Displays the status of the host interface.	
Job Submitted Time	Displays the date when the job was submitted.	

Printer Settings

Use the Printer Settings menu to display the Printer Settings Report, Printer Settings, and Printer Maintenance tabs and to configure the printer settings.

The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

Printer Settings Report

The Printer Settings Report tab includes the Menu Settings and Reports pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of the printer menus.

System Settings	Power Saver Time - Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
	mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit that is used on the touch panel.
	Display Brightness	Displays the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.

Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
NFC Authentication Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.	
All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. Off indicates that all the tones are disabled.	
Low Toner Alert Message	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.	
OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.	
Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.	
RAM Disk	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.	
Panel Language	Displays the language used on the touch panel.	
Max E-mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.	
Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.	
Fault Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.	
Default Paper Size	Displays the default print paper size.	
Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.	
Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.	
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Displays where to insert a banner sheet in the output paper.	
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Displays the tray to feed a banner sheet.	
Substitute Tray	Displays if paper of another size has to be used when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size setting for the current job.	
Letterhead 2 Sided	Displays whether to print both sides on letterhead.	
A4<>Letter Switch	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).	
Report 2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.	
Use Another Tray	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.	

Network Settings	Adobe Protocol	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
USB Settings	USB Port	Displays whether to enable the USB interface.
	PS Data Format	Displays PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
	Job Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
PCL Settings	Paper Tray	Displays the paper input tray.
	Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting.
	Custom Paper Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper.
	Custom Paper Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper.
	Orientation	Displays how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
	2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Font	Displays the selected font from the list of registered fonts.
	Symbol Set	Displays a symbol set for the specified font.
	Font Size	Displays the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
	Font Pitch	Displays the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
	Form Line	Displays the number of lines in a page.
	Quantity	Displays the number of copies to print.
	Image Enhance	Displays whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
	Hex Dump	Displays whether to enable the Hex Dump feature.
	Draft Mode	Displays whether to print in the draft mode.
	Line Termination	Displays whether to set the line termination.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
	Ignore Form Feed	Displays whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.
PS Settings	PS Error Report	Displays whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.
	PS Job Time-out	Displays the execution time for one PostScript job.
	Paper Select Mode	Displays the tray that is selected in the PostScript printing.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
PDF Settings	Quantity	Displays the number of copies to print.
	2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Print Mode	Displays the print mode setting.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a job.
	Output Size	Displays the output paper size.
	Layout	Displays the output layout.
	Default Color	Displays the color mode setting.
Secure Settings	Panel Lock Control	Displays whether to lock Admin Settings with a password.
	Сору	Displays whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
	Scan to E-mail	Displays whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password
	Fax	Displays whether to lock the Fax function with a password.
	Fax Driver	Displays whether to lock the Fax Driver function with a password.
	Scan to Network	Displays whether to lock the Scan to Network function with a passwor

	Scan to PC	Displays whether to lock the Scan to PC function with a password.
	PC Scan	Displays whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
	Scan to USB	Displays whether to lock the Scan to USB function with a password.
	USB Direct Print	Displays whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
	ID Copy	Displays whether to lock the ID Copy function with a password.
	USB Services - Show When Inserted	Displays whether to show a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether a password is required to receive faxes.
	Edit E-mail From Fields	Displays whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.
	Reconfirm Recipients	Displays whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.
	Software Download	Displays whether to enable download of firmware updates.
	Display of Network Information	Displays whether to show network information in the message field of the Home screen.
	Login Error	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to Panel Lock, Function Enabled, and Secure Receive.
	NFC Authentication	Displays whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.
	Expiration Mode* ¹	Displays whether to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Expiration Time*1	Displays the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.
	Recurrence*1	Displays the period to repeat the setting.
	Weekly Settings*1	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
	Monthly Settings*1	Displays the day of the month to repeat the setting.
Secure Settings - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print	Set Available Time	Displays whether to set the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	Start Time	Displays the start time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	End Time	Displays the end time of the available time period for the Print, Copy, Fax, and Scan functions, respectively.
	Recurrence	Displays the day of the week to repeat the setting.
Copy Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a copy job.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the default copy density.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.

Copy Color Balance	Yellow Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Yellow Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Density	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Density	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Density	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
Copy Settings	2 Sided Copying	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided copying.
	2-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Send	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Fax Settings	Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
	Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.
	Line Type	Displays the line type; PSTN or PBX.
	Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
	Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax.
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
	Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the 2-digit remote receive code when Remote Receive is On .	
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.	
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.	
Forwarding Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Displays the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Server Type	Displays the server type.	
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.	
Server Port Number	Displays the assigned server port number.	
Share Name	Displays the assigned shared name.	
Server Path	Displays the assigned server path.	
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts to make if the destination fax number is busy.	
Interval of Redial	Displays the interval between redial attempts.	
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between re-send attempts.	
Tone/Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.	
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.	
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).	
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.	
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.	
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.	
Modem Speed	Displays the modem speed.	
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the Sending Fax screen when manually sending a fax.	
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.	
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.	
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.	
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.	

Scan Defaults	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Output Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Binding of Original	Displays the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.
	Darken/Lighten	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhanc text on the scan.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the selected TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	File Naming Mode	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Displays the text string that will be added to the file name.
	Create Folder	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.
USB Direct Print	Output Color	Displays whether to print in color or in black and white.
Defaults	Select Tray	Displays the default input tray.
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Layout	Displays the default paper layout when Layout is selected.
	Image Types	Displays the mode used to set the print image quality of documents.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort a job.
MIFARE Customized	User ID Block 1	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
Card	User ID Block 2	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
	User ID Block 3	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust Transfer Belt Unit	K Offset	Displays the value for black ghost image.
	YMC Offset	Displays the value for color ghost image.
Adjust 2nd BTR	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick*2	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m ²)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick*2 (164-216g/m²)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m ²)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for coated paper.

	Coated Thick ^{*2} (164-216g/m ²)	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for labels.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller (-5 to 10) for recycled paper.
Adjust Fusing Unit	Plain	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for plain paper.
	Plain Thick*2	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick plain paper.
	Covers (106-163g/m ²)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for cover paper.
	Covers Thick*2 (164-216g/m²)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick cover paper.
	Coated (106-163g/m ²)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for coated paper.
	Coated Thick*2 (164-216g/m²)	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for thick coated paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for labels.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for envelopes.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit (-3 to 3) for recycled paper.
Auto Registration Adjustn	nent	Displays whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Clock Settings	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12H.
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular URL (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna) that can be linked to Order Supplies at:.
	Premier	Displays the premier URL (http://premier.dell.com) that can be linked to Order Supplies at:.
Dell ColorTrack	ColorTrack Mode	Displays whether to enable the ColorTrack.
	Non Registered User	Displays whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.
	Auto Color To Mono Print	Displays whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.
	ColorTrack Error Report	Displays whether to print the error report on the ColorTrack mode.

Tray Management	MPF Use Driver Settings	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type
	for Print Job	of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Paper Size*3	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type ^{*3}	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Paper Size - Y*3	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
		Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Display Tray Prompt ^{*3}	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray l.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of trayl.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Display Prompt	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in trayl.
	Tray 2 Paper Size*4	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Type*4	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y*4	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X*4	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Display Prompt*4	Displays whether to show a popup menu that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550- sheet feeder.
	1st Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the first priority.
	2nd Priority	Displays the paper source to be used as the second priority.
	3rd Priority*4	Displays the paper source to be used as the third priority.

^{*1} This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

^{*2} For paper weight specifications, see "Paper Type Specifications."

 $^{^{*3}}$ $\,$ This item is available only when Off in MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job is selected.

 $^{^{*4}\,\,}$ This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Reports

Purpose:

To print various types of reports and lists.

Values:

System Settings	Click Start to print the System Settings page.	
Panel Settings	Click Start to print the Panel Settings page.	
PCL Fonts List	Click Start to print the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) Fonts List.	
PCL Macros List	Click Start to print the PCL Macro List.	
PS Fonts List	Click Start to print the PS Fonts List.	
PDF Fonts List	Click Start to print the PDF Fonts List.	
Job History	Click Start to print the Job History report.	
Error History	Click Start to print the Error History report.	
Print Meter	Click Start to print the Print Meter report.	
Color Test Page	Click Start to print the Color Test Page.	
Protocol Monitor	Click Start to print the Protocol Monitor report.	
Speed Dial	Click Start to print the Speed Dial report.	
Address Book	Click Start to print the Address Book report.	
Server Address	Click Start to print the Server Address report.	
Fax Activity	Click Start to print the Fax Activity report.	
Fax Pending	Click Start to print the Fax Pending report.	
Stored Documents*1	Click Start to print the Stored Documents list.	

^{*1} This item is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Printer Settings

The Printer Settings tab includes System Settings, Network Settings, USB Settings, PCL Settings, PS Settings, PDF Settings, Secure Settings, Copy Defaults, Copy Color Balance, Copy Settings, Fax Defaults, Fax Settings, Scan Defaults, USB Direct Print Defaults, and MIFARE Customized Card pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Power Saver Time - Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Time - Deep Sleep	Sets the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it has entered Sleep mode.
mm / inch	Sets the measurement unit to be used on the touch panel as either mm or inches.
Display Brightness	Sets the brightness level of the touch panel screen.
Control Panel Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Invalid Key Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.

Machine Ready Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready, or disables the tone.
Copy Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Job Completed Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than a copy job is complete, or disables the tone.
Fault Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.
Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.
Low Toner Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low, or disables the tone.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
NFC Authentication Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
Low Toner Alert Message	Alerts you if the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	Sets whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
Auto Log Print	Sets if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk	Sets whether to allocate RAM for the file system for the Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print features.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the touch panel.
Max E-mail Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent. The available range is from 50 to 16384 (KB) (Default: 2048).
Auto Reset	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets its settings to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Fault Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
Default Paper Size	Sets the default print paper size.
Print ID	Sets where to print the user ID on the output paper.
Print Text	Sets whether the printer outputs PDL data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
Banner Sheet Insert Position	Sets where to insert a banner sheet in the output.
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Sets from which tray a banner sheet is fed.
Substitute Tray	Sets whether to use another size paper when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
Letterhead 2 Sided	Sets whether to print on both sides of letterhead.
A4<>Letter Switch	Sets whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
Report 2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.
Use Another Tray	Sets whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.

Network Settings

Purpose:

To Specify the PostScript communication protocol for this printer.

Values:

Adobe Protocol	Sets PostScript communication protocol for each interface.

USB Settings

Purpose:

To change USB settings on your printer.

Values:

USB Port	Enables the USB interface on your printer.
PS Data Format	Sets PostScript communication protocol for each interface.
Job Time-out	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.

PCL Settings

Purpose:

To change the PCL settings.

Paper Tray	Sets the paper input tray.
Paper Size	Sets the paper size.
Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper. The available range is from 127 mm (5.0 inch) to 355 mm (14.0 inch).
Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper. The available range is from 77 mm (3.0 inch) to 215 mm (8.5 inch).
Orientation	Sets how text and graphics are oriented on the page.
2 Sided Print	Sets duplexing as the default for all print jobs.
Font	Sets the font from the list of registered fonts.
Symbol Set	Sets a symbol set for the specified font.
Font Size	Sets the font size for scalable typographic fonts.
Font Pitch	Sets the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
Form Line	Sets the number of lines in a page.
Quantity	Sets the number of copies to print.
Image Enhance	Sets whether to enable the Image Enhancement feature.
Hex Dump	Sets whether to help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.
Draft Mode	Sets whether to print in the draft mode.
Line Termination	Sets how to handle line terminations.
Default Color	Sets the print color mode as Color or Black . This setting is used for print jobs without a specified color print mode.
Ignore Form Feed	Sets whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

PS Settings

Purpose:

To change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.

Values:

PS Error Report	Sets whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.
PS Job Time-out	Sets the execution time for one PostScript job.
Paper Select Mode	Sets the way to select the tray for the PostScript mode.
Default Color	Sets the default color mode for the PostScript mode.

PDF Settings

Purpose:

To change the PDF settings.

Values:

Quantity	Sets the number of copies.
2 Sided Print	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Print Mode	Sets a print mode.
PDF Password	Sets a password.
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.
Output Size	Sets the output paper size.
Layout	Sets the output layout.
Default Color	Sets the output color.

Secure Settings

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to Admin Settings with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Control ^{*1}	Enables/Disables password protection for the Admin Settings.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Admin Settings.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
*1 Some setting items in the Secure Settings are displayed only when this setting item is enabled.	

NOTE: You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To specify whether to lock the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions with a password, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Сору	Sets whether to lock the Copy function with a password.
Scan to E-mail	Sets whether to lock the Scan to E-mail function with a password.
Fax	Sets whether to lock the Fax function with a password.
Fax Driver	Sets whether to lock the Fax Driver function with a password.
Scan to Network	Sets whether to lock the Scan to Network function with a password.
Scan to PC	Sets whether to lock the Scan to PC function with a password.
PC Scan	Sets whether to lock the PC Scan function with a password.
Scan to USB	Sets whether to lock the Scan to USB function with a password.
USB Direct Print	Sets whether to lock the USB Direct Print function with a password.
ID Copy	Sets whether to lock the ID Copy function with a password.
USB Services - Show When Inserted	Sets whether to show a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB memory is inserted into the printer.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.



NOTE: You can set the password for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool from Set Password in Print Server Settings.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Enables/Disables password protection for all incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password for incoming faxes.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.



NOTE: You can set the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** from **Set Password** in **Print Server Settings**.

Edit E-mail From Fields

Purpose:

To set whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use the Scan to E-mail function.

Reconfirm Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to reconfirm before sending fax or scan jobs.

Software Download

Purpose:

To set whether to enable download of firmware updates.

Display of Network Information

Purpose:

To set whether to show network information in the message field of the **Home** screen.

Login Error

Purpose:

To specify how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to Panel Lock, Function Enabled, and Secure Receive.

Values:

Login Error	Displays how many times an administrator can attempt to log in to Panel Lock, Function Enabled, and Secure Receive.
	and becare receive.

NFC Authentication

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

Set Available Time - Copy/Scan/Fax/Print

To specify the time to enable the secure setting for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.

Values:

Set Available Time	Allows you to set the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.	
Start Time	Sets the start time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.	
End Time	Sets the end time of the available time period for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.	
Recurrence	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.	

Secure Job Expiration



NOTE: Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Expiration Mode	Allows you to set the date to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
Expiration Time	Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
Recurrence	Sets the period to repeat the setting.	
Weekly Settings	Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.	
Monthly Settings	Sets the day of the month to repeat the setting.	

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.	
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.	
Collation	Sets whether to sort a copy job.	
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio.	
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the custom reduction/enlargement ratio.	
Original Size	Sets the paper size of the original.	
Original Type	Sets the type of the original.	
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default copy density.	
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.	
Color Saturation	Adjusts the saturation of colors to make the colors lighter or darker than the original.	
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.	
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the background suppression level.	

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the copy color balance.

-	
Yellow Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
Yellow Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
Yellow High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
Magenta Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
Magenta High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
Cyan Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
Cyan High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black Low Density	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
Black Medium Density	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
Black High Density	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Copy settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

2 Sided Copying	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided copying.	
2-Up	Off [*] Does not perform multiple-up printing.	
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified for Reduce/Enlarge.
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard [*]	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
2 Sided Scanning	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.	
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default density to fax your documents lighter or darker.	
Delayed Send	Sets the fax transmission	n start time when sending a fax at a specified time.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the Fax settings.



NOTE: You cannot set up the items on the **Fax Settings** page unless you set up the country code under **Country**.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Fax Number	Allows you to enter the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Fax Header Name	Allows you to ente	r a name that will be printed on the header of faxes.	
Line Type	Sets the default line type; PSTN or PBX.		
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.		
DRPD Pattern	Sets the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting from Pattern1 to Pattern7.		
	DRPD is a service	provided by some telephone companies.	
Receive Mode	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing a remote receive code, or by tapping Manual Receive in On Hook and then tapping Receive. For details about Manual Receive, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."	
	Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.	
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Receive Tel/Fax , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.	
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the telephone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.	
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.	
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax.		
Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after answering an incoming call.		
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.		
Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.		
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject unwanted faxes by accepting only the faxes from the numbers registered in the Phone Book		
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to pr	int on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to rec	ceive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Sets a 2-digit remote receive code when Remote Receive is On .		
Discard Size	Sets whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting Auto Reduction automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.		
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to for	rward incoming faxes to a specified destination.	
Forwarding Number	Allows you to ente	r the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 1	Allows you to ente	r the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 2	Allows you to ente	r the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 3	Allows you to ente	r the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	

Forwarding E-mail Address 4	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Forwarding E-mail Address 5	Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
Server Type	Sets the server type.	
Server Address	Sets the server address registered under the server ID.	
Server Port Number	Sets the server port number.	
Login Name	Sets the login name.	
Login Password	Sets the login password.	
Re-enter Password	Enter the password again to confirm it.	
Share Name	Sets the shared name.	
Server Path	Sets the server path.	
Redial Attempts	Sets the number of redial attempts (0–13) to make if the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.	
Interval of Redial	Sets the interval (1–15 minutes) between redial attempts.	
Resend Delay	Sets the interval (3–255 seconds) between re-send attempts.	
Tone/Pulse	Sets whether to use tone or pulse dialing.	
Prefix Dial	Sets whether to set a prefix dial number.	
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).	
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.	
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.	
ECM	Sets whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.	
Modem Speed	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.	
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Sets whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the Sending Fax screen when manually sending a fax.	
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.	
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.	
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.	
Fax Protocol	Sets whether to print the protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an eroccurs.	

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

File Format	Sets the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.	
Output Color	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.	
Resolution	Sets the default scan resolution.	
Original Size	Sets the paper size of the original.	

2 Sided Scanning	Sets whether to scan both sides of a document.	
Binding of Original	Sets the binding position for the 2-sided scanning.	
Darken/Lighten	Sets the default scan density.	
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.	
Contrast	Sets the default contrast level.	
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.	
Auto Exposure Level	Sets the default background suppression level.	
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm (0.0 inch) to 50 mm (2.0 inch).	
TIFF File Format	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 or TTN2.	
Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.	
File Naming Mode	Sets the detailed settings of File Naming Mode to Auto, Add Prefix or Add Suffix.	
Prefix/Suffix String	Sets the texts that are added when Add Prefix or Add Suffix are selected.	
Create Folder	Sets whether to create a folder when saving scanned documents.	

USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own USB Direct Print Defaults setting.

Values:

Output Color	Sets whether to print in color or in black and white.	
Select Tray	Sets the default input tray.	
2 Sided Printing	Sets whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Layout	Sets Displays the default paper layout when Layout is selected.	
Image Types	Sets the print image quality when printing documents.	
Collation	Sets whether to sort the output.	
PDF Password	Sets a password.	
Re-enter PDF Password	Confirms the set password.	

MIFARE Customized Card

Purpose:

To register SSFC formatted NFC ID cards.

Values:

User ID Block 1	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.	
User ID Block 2	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.	
User ID Block 3	Allows you to register the MIFARE Customized Card.	

Printer Maintenance

The Printer Maintenance tab includes the Paper Density, Adjust Transfer Belt Unit, Adjust 2nd BTR, Adjust Fusing Unit, Auto Registration Adjustment, Color Registration Adjustments, Reset Defaults, Initialize PrintMeter, Storage, Non-Dell Toner, Adjust Altitude, Clock Settings, and Web Link Customization pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Sets the density of plain paper to Light or Normal.
Label	Sets the density of labels to Light or Normal.

Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing.)

Values:

K Offset	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
YMC Offset	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.

Adjust 2nd BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

CAUTION: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Covers Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick cover paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Coated Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick coated paper within the range of -5 to 10.		
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -5 to 10.		
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -5 to 10.		
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -5 to 10.		

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.



NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Covers Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Coated Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.		
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for labels within the range of -3 to 3.		
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.		
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.		

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Color Registration Adjustments

Purpose:

To specify whether to manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required such as when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.



NOTE: The Color Registration Adjustments feature can be configured when Auto Registration Adjustment is set to Off.

Auto Correct	Click Start to automatically perform color registration correction.	
Color Regi Chart	Click Start to print a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, look at the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under Color Registration Adjustments.	
Color Registration Adjustments	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan within the range of -9 to 9.	

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Reset Defaults	Reset Defaults User Fax Section and restart printer.	Click Start to reset the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Scan Section and restart printer.	Click Start to reset the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	Reset Defaults User Account Section and restart printer.	Click Start to reset the user account entries.
	Reset Defaults System Section and restart printer.	Click Start to reset the system parameters.
Power On Wizard	Power On Wizard	Click Start to perform the initial setup for the printer.

Initialize PrintMeter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to 0.

Storage



NOTE: Storage feature is available only when **RAM Disk** is enabled.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored in the RAM disk.

Values:

Clear Storage*1	All Clear	Click Start to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk.
	Secure Document	Click Start to clear all files stored as Secure Print, Proof Print, Private Mail Box Print, and Public Mail Box Print in the RAM disk.
	Stored Document	Click Start to clear all files stored in the RAM disk.
*1 This item is available only when RAM Disk is enabled.		

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.



WARNING: Using a non-Dell toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To specify the clock settings.

Values:

Date Format	Sets the date format; YYYY/MM/DD, MM/DD/YYYY, or DD/MM/YYYY.	
Time Format	Sets the time format; 24 Hour Clock or 12 Hour Clock.	
Time Zone	Sets the time zone.	
Set Date	Sets the current date.	
Set Time	Sets the current time.	

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from Order Supplies at: in the left frame.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Sets a URL to be linked to Order Supplies at:	
Regular	Displays the regular URL (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna) that can be linked to Order Supplies at:.	
Premier	Displays the premier URL (http://premier.dell.com) that can be linked to Order Supplies at:.	

Print Server Settings

Use the Print Server Settings menu to set the type of printer interface and the necessary conditions for communication.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

Print Server Reports

The Print Server Reports tab includes the Print Server Setup Page and the E-Mail Alert Setup Page.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the Print Server Settings tab.

Ethernet ^{*1}	Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the printer.

Wireless Settings*2	SSID	Displays the name that ide	entifies the network.	
	Network Type	Displays the network type	from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode	
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter.		
	Link Channel	Displays the channel num	ber of the connection.	
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the	connection.	
Wi-Fi Direct*2	Wi-Fi Direct	Displays whether to enable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.		
	Group Role	Displays the group role setting.		
	Device Name	Displays the printer name. Confirm it when selecting the printer name your Wi-Fi mobile device.		
	WPS Setup	Displays the WPS setup method.		
	Group Owner	SSID	Displays the name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network.	
		Passphrase	Displays the pass phrase. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.	
		IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Wi-Fi Direct adapter.	
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.	
	Status	Connection Device	Displays the mobile name currently connected.	
		Current Role	Displays the current group role of the printer.	
		Current SSID	Displays the current SSID. Confirm it selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.	
TCP/IP Settings	IP Mode	Displays the IP mode.		
	Host Name	Displays the host name.		
	LAN1*9	IP Address Mode	Displays the IP address mode.	
	IPv4*3	IP Address	Displays the IP address.	
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.	
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.	
	IPv6 ^{*4}	Enable Stateless Address	Displays whether to enable the stateless address.	
		Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.	
		Get IP Address from DHCP	Displays whether to automatically set the IP address via DHCP.	
		Manual Address ^{*5}	Displays the IP address.	
		Stateless Address 1-3 ^{*6}	Displays the stateless addresses.	
		Stateful Address 1-3	Displays the stateful addresses.	
		Link Local Address*6	Displays the link local address.	
		Manual Gateway Address*5	Displays the gateway address.	
		Auto Configure Gateway Address*6	Displays the gateway address.	

	LAN2*10 IPv4	IP Address	Displays the IP address when Group Role of Wi-Fi Direct is set to Group Owner.	
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask when Group Role of Wi-Fi Direct is set to Group Owner.	
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address when Group Role of Wi-Fi Direct is set to Group Owner.	
DNS	IPv4 ^{*3}	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Displays whether to automatically set the DNS server address via DHCP.	
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.	
	IPv6 ^{*4}	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6-lite	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.	
		Current DNS Server Address	Displays the current DNS server address.	
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.	
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)	Displays the status of the DNS Dynamic Update feature.	
		Auto Generate Search List	Displays whether to automatically generate a search list.	
		Search Domain Name	Displays the search domain name.	
		Time-out	Displays the time-out period.	
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution*7	Displays whether to use the DNS Name Resolution feature.	
WINS*3	WINS Mode	Displays whether to automatically set the primary and secondary Wisserver addresses via DHCP.		
	WINS Primary Server	Displays the primary WINS server address.		
	WINS Secondary Server	Displays the secondary WINS server address.		
LPD	Port Status	Displays the port status of the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) protocol.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
Port9100	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	Port Number	Displays the port number.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection tir	ne-out period.	
IPP	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	Printer URI	Displays the printer URI.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection tir	ne-out period.	
	Port Number	Displays the port number.		
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneous the client.		
WSD	Scan to WSD	Displays whether to use We	eb Services on Devices (WSD) for scanning.	
	WSD Print	Displays whether to use W	SD for printing.	
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port nu	mber.	
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-o		
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification tin		

	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximu	um number of TTLs.	
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.		
Network TWAIN	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connect	tion time-out period.	
FTP	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connect	tion time-out period.	
HTTP	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Port Number	Displays the port nu	mber.	
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximu	um number of simultaneous connections.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connect	tion time-out period.	
SMB	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Host Name	Displays the host na	me.	
	Workgroup	Displays the workgro	oup.	
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximu	um number of sessions.	
	Unicode Support	Displays whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.		
	Auto Master Mode	Displays whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.		
	Encrypt Password	Displays whether to encrypt the password during SMB transmission.		
	Job Time-Out	Displays the job time-out period.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
Bonjour (mDNS)	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	LAN1/LAN2*9	Host Name	Displays the host name.	
		Printer Name	Displays the printer name.	
	Wide-Area Bonjour	Displays the status o	of the Wide-Area Bonjour feature.	
Telnet	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connect	tion time-out period.	
SNMP	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Displays the status o	of the SNMP vl/v2c feature.	
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Displays the status o	of the SNMP v3 feature.	
Update Address Book	Port Status	Displays the port sta	itus.	
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connect	tion time-out period.	
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to	enable the FTP Passive mode.	
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		

SNTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	IP Address / Host Name	Displays the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.
	Time Synchronization Interval	Displays the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
AirPrint	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	LAN1/LAN2*9	Name Displays the host name.
	Location	Displays the location of the printer.
	Geo-Location	Displays the physical location of the printer.
Google Cloud Print	Port Status	Displays the port status.
	Registration state	Displays the registration state.
Dell Document Hub	Print from Dell Document Hub	Displays whether to enable Print from Dell Document Hub.
	Scan to Dell Document Hub	Displays whether to enable Scan to Dell Document Hub.
	Dell Document Hub Server URL	Displays the URL to access the Dell Document Hub Server.
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the time duration until the connection becomes time-out.
	Polling Interval	Displays the interval time for polling.
Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server	Displays the status of proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server	Displays the address of the bypass proxy server.
	Server Name	Displays the server name.
	Port Number	Displays the port number.
	Authentication	Displays the status of authentication feature.
Authentication System	Authentication System Settings (for Server Address/Phone Book)	Displays the authentication method.
SSL/TLS	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication	Displays the status of the HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Displays HTTP - SSL/TLS Communication Port Number.
	LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication	Displays the status of the LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication.
	SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication	Displays the status of the SMTP - SSL/TLS Communication.
IPsec Settings	Protocol	Displays the protocol status.
802.1x*1	Enable IEEE 802.1x	Displays the status of IEEE 802.1x.
	Authentication Method	Displays the setting of authentication method for IEEE 802.1x.
IP Filter (IPv4)*8	Access List	Displays the list of IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer.
SMTP Domain	Domain Filtering	Displays whether to enable Domain Filtering.
Filtering Allow Domain List		Displays the domains allowed for sending e-mails.

- *1 This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.
- *2 This item is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.
- *3 This item is displayed when **IPv4 Mode** or **Dual Stack** in **IP Mode** is selected.
- *4 $\,$ This item is displayed when IPv6 Mode or Dual Stack in IP Mode is selected.
- This item is displayed only when **Use Manual Address** is set to **Enable**.
- This item is displayed only when an IP address has been assigned.
- This item is available only when using IPv6 dual mode.
- This item is available only for LPD or Port9100.
- The menu title is displayed only when Wi-Fi Direct is set to Enable.
- *10 This item is displayed only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

E-Mail Alert Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the Scan to E-mail feature, forwarding fax to e-mail feature, E-Mail Alert feature, and E-Mail Report feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the Print Server Settings tab.

E-Mail Server Settings	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Primary SMTP Gateway	Displays the primary SMT	TP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Displays the SMTP port number.	
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.	
	POP3 Server Address	Displays the POP3 (Post O	Office Protocol 3) server address.
	POP3 Port Number	Displays the POP3 port number.	
	Reply Address	Displays the IP address of servers connected with SMTP protocol when is incoming.	
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.	
E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in E-Mail List 1.
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature specified in E-Mail List 2 .
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

E-Mail Report Settings	History Report	Displays whether job history report feature is enabled.
	Statistics Report	Displays whether the statistic report feature is enabled.
	Volume Report	Displays whether the volume report feature is enabled.
	Transmission Time	Displays what time the reports are sent.
	Recurrence	Displays at what recurrence the reports are sent.
	Weekly Settings (for Weekly only)	Displays the day of the week the reports are sent.
	Monthly Settings (for Monthly only)	Displays the day of the month the reports are sent.
	Destination E-Mail Address 1	Displays the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.
	Destination E-Mail Address 2	Displays the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.

Print Server Settings

The Print Server Settings tab includes the Basic Information, Port Settings, TCP/IP, SMB, E-Mail Alert, Bonjour (mDNS), SNMP, Scan to PC, SNTP, AirPrint, Google Cloud Print, Dell Document Hub, Proxy Server, Wireless LAN, Wi-Fi Direct, and Reset Print Server pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure basic information of the printer.

Values:

System Settings	Printer Name	Sets the name of the printer.
Location		Sets the location of the printer.
	Contact Person	Sets the contact name, number, and other information of the printer administrator and service center.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Sets the contact address of the printer administrator and service center.
	Asset Tag Number	Enters the asset tag number for the printer.
Dell Printer	Auto Refresh	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
Configuration Web Tool Settings	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.



NOTE: The Auto Refresh feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, Printer Status page, Job List page, and Completed Jobs page.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To enable or disable printing ports and management protocol features.

Values:

Ethernet*1	Ethernet Settings	Auto	Detects the Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.	
		10Base-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.	
		10Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.	
		100Base-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.	
		100Base-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.	
		1000Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 1000Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.	
	Current Ethernet Setting	gs	Displays the current settings of the Ethernet.	
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the printer.	
Port Status	LPD	Sets whether to enable LPD.		
	Port9100	Sets whether to enable Port9100.		
	IPP	Sets whether to enable IPP.		
	WSD Print	Sets whether to enable WSD Print.		
	Scan to WSD	Sets whether to enable Scan to WSD.		
	Network TWAIN	Sets whether to enable Network TWAIN		
	FTP	Sets whether to enable FTP.		
	SMB	Sets whether to enable SMB.		
	Bonjour (mDNS)	Sets whether to enable Bonjour (mDNS).		
	E-Mail Alert	Sets whether to enable E-Mail Alert.		
	Telnet	Sets whether to enable Telnet.		
	SNMP	Sets whether to enable SN	MP.	
	Update Address Book	Sets whether to enable Update Address Book.		
	SNTP	Sets whether to enable SNTP.		
	Google Cloud Print	Sets whether to enable Google Cloud Print.		
	Print from Dell Document Hub	Sets whether to enable Prin	nt from Dell Document Hub.	
	Scan to Dell Document Hub	Sets whether to enable Sca	n to Dell Document Hub.	

 $^{^{*1}}$ This item is available only when the printer is connected using an Ethernet cable.



NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click the **Apply New Settings** button to apply the new settings.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

TCP/IP	IP Mode	Sets the IP mode.			
Settings	Host Name	Sets the host name.			
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Sets the method for acquiring the IP address.		
		Manual IP Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.		
		Manual Subnet Mask	When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.		
		Manual Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.		
	IPv6	Enable Stateless Address	Select the check box to enable the stateless address.		
		Use Manual Address	Select the check box to set the IP address manually.		
		Get IP Address from DHCP	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the IP address via DHCP.		
		Manual Address	Sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.		
		Manual Gateway Address	Sets the gateway address.		
DNS	DNS Domain Name	Sets the DNS domain name.			
	IPv4	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Allows you to enable or disable the automatic setting of the DNS server address via DHCP.		
		Manual DNS Server Address	Manually sets the DNS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx format when Get DNS Server Address from DHCP is not selected.		
	IPv6	Get DNS Server Address from DHCPv6- lite	Select the check box to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCPv6-lite server.		
		Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.		
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv4)	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.		
		DNS Dynamic Update (IPv6)	Select the check box to enable dynamic updates to DNS.		

		Auto Generate Search List	Select the check box to automatically generate the search list.
		Search Domain Name	Sets the search domain name. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.
		Time-out	Sets the time-out period between 1 and 60 seconds.
		Priority to IPv6 DNS Name Resolution	Select the check box to enable the DNS Name Resolution feature.
WINS	WINS Mode	Allows you to enable or WINS server addresses	disable the automatic setting of the primary and secondary via DHCP.
	WINS Primary Server	Manually sets the prima Mode is not selected.	ry WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx format when WINS
	WINS Secondary Server	Manually sets the secon when WINS Mode is no	dary (backup) WINS server address in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format ot selected.
LPD	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period from 1 to 3,600 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Click IP Filter (IPv4) to	o set the IP Filter settings on the IP Filter (IPv4) page.
Port9100	Port Number	Sets the port number fro	om 9,000 to 9,999.
	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period between 1 and 1,000 seconds.
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Click IP Filter (IPv4) to	o set the IP filter settings on the IP Filter (IPv4) page.
IPP	Printer URI	Displays the printer UR	I.
	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
	Port Number	Displays the port numb	er for receiving requests from the client.
	Maximum Sessions	Displays the maximum	number of connections received simultaneously by the client.
WSD	Port Number	Sets the port number to	80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Receive Time-Out	Sets the receive time-ou	at period from 1 to 65,535 seconds.
	Notification Time- Out	Sets the notification tin	ne-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	Maximum Number of TTL	Sets the maximum num	lber of TTL from 1 to 10.
	Maximum Number of Notification	Sets the maximum num	aber of notifications from 10 to 20.
Network TWAIN	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period between 1 and 65,535 seconds.
FTP	Password	Sets the password for F	ГР.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the password agai	n to confirm it.
	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period from 1 to 1000 seconds.
HTTP	Port Number	Sets the port number to	80 or from 8,000 to 9,999.
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum	number of simultaneous connections.
	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection tim	e-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.

Telnet	Password Sets the password for Telnet.	
Re-enter Password Confirms the set password.		Confirms the set password.
	Connection Time- Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1,000 seconds.
Update Address Book	Connection Time- Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 65,535 seconds. Out	

To configure the IP Filter feature, enter an IP address to be filtered in the Address field and the subnet mask in the Address Mask field. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field. "*" is appended to the current value.

IP Filter Setup Procedure

You can set up to a maximum of five items and the first item set takes priority. When setting multiple filters, enter the shortest address first followed by a slightly longer address, a longer address and so on.

Enabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to enable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the Access List row 1.
- 2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the Address field and "255.255.255" in the Address Mask field.
- 3 Select Accept.
- 4 Click Apply New Settings.

Disabling Printing From a Specified User

The following describes the procedure to disable printing only from the "192.168.100.10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the Access List row 1.
- 2 Enter "192.168.100.10" in the Address field and "255.255.255.255" in the Address Mask field.
- 3 Select Reject.
- 4 Click the first column of the Access List row 2.
- **5** Enter "0.0.0.0" in the Address field and "0.0.0.0" in the Address Mask field.
- 6 Select Accept.
- 7 Click Apply New Settings.

Enabling and Disabling Printing from Network Addresses

You can enable printing from the "192.168" network address and disable printing from the "192.168.200" network address.

The example below describes how to enable printing from the "192.168.200.10" IP address.

- 1 Click the first column of the Access List row 1.
- 2 Enter "192.168.200.10" in the Address field and "255.255.255.255" in the Address Mask field.
- 3 Select Accept.
- 4 Click the first column of the Access List row 2.
- **5** Enter "192.168.200.0" in the Address field and "255.255.0" in the Address Mask field.
- 6 Select Reject.
- 7 Click the first column of the Access List row 3.
- 8 Enter "192.168.0.0" in the Address field and "255.255.0.0" in the Address Mask field.
- 9 Select Accept.
- 10 Click Apply New Settings.

SMB

Purpose:

To specify the setting of the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.

Values:

Host Name	Sets the host name of the server computer.	
Workgroup	Sets the workgroup.	
Maximum Sessions	Sets the maximum number of sessions.	
Unicode Support	Sets whether to notify the host name and workgroup name in Unicode characters during SMB transmission.	
Auto Master Mode	Sets whether to enable the Auto Master Mode.	
Encrypt Password	Sets whether to encrypt the password.	
Job Time-Out	Sets the job time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.	
Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 60 and 3,600 seconds.	

E-Mail Alert

Purpose:

To configure detailed settings of E-Mail Alert. This page can also be displayed by clicking the E-Mail Alert in the left frame.

E-Mail Server Settings	Primary SMTP Gateway	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Sets the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Sets the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	SMTP Login User	Sets the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	SMTP Login Password	Sets the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter SMTP Login Password	Confirms the set SMTP account password.
	POP3 Server Address*1	Sets the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.
	POP3 Port Number*1	Sets the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	POP User Name ^{*1}	Sets the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	POP User Password*1	Sets the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter POP User Password*1	Confirms the set password.
	Reply Address	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each E-mail Alert.
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.

E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E-Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
	E-Mail List 2		Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the E- Mail Alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for paper handling.
		Service Call	Select the check box to receive an E-Mail Alert for Service Calls.
E-Mail Report Settings	History Report		Sets whether to receive the job history report by e-mail after every 20 print, copy, scan, and fax jobs.
	Statistics Report		Sets whether to receive the statistic report by e-mail on the use of print, copy, scan, and fax.
	Volume Report		Sets whether to receive the print volume report by e-mail.
	Transmission Time		Sets what time the reports are sent.
	Recurrence		Sets at what recurrence the reports are sent.
	Weekly Settings (for Weekly only)		Sets the day of the week the reports are sent.
	Monthly Settings (for Monthly only)		Sets the day of the month the reports are sent.
	Destination E-Mail Address l		Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.
	Destination E-Mail Address 2		Allows you to enter the e-mail address to which the reports are sent to.

^{*1} This item is available only when POP before SMTP (Plain) or POP before SMTP (APOP) for E-Mail Send Authentication is selected.

Bonjour (mDNS)

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of Bonjour.

Host Name	Sets the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Printer Name	Sets the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made.
Wide-Area Bonjour	Select the check box to enable the Wide-Area Bonjour protocol.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

SNMP Configuration	Enable SNMP v1/v2c Protocol	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v1/v2c protocol.
	Edit SNMP vl/v2c Properties	Click to display the SNMP v1/v2c page and to edit the setting of SNMP v1/v2c protocol from the page.
	Enable SNMP v3 Protocol	Select the check box to enable the SNMP v3 protocol.
	Edit SNMP v3 Properties	Click to display the SNMP v3 page and to edit the setting of SNMP v3 protocol from the page.
		You can click this item only when SSL communication is enabled.

SNMP v1/v2c

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v1/v2 protocol.

To enter this page, click Edit SNMP v1/v2 Properties in the SNMP page.

Community Name	Community Name (Read only) ^{*1}	Sets the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read only)*1	Enters the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Read/Write) *1	Sets the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write)*1	Enters the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm it.
	Community Name (Trap) ^{*1}	Sets the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if no input is made. Characters entered for Community Name (Trap) in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
	Re-enter Community Name (Trap)*1	Enters the community name used for trap again to confirm it.

Trap Notification 1-4	Notification 1-4 Trap Address Type	Select the check boxes to notify trap occurrence. In this case, specify the IP
	Trap Address	address and IP socket in the following format:
	Port Number	IPv4
	Notify	Specify the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note
Network*2	that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65,535.	
		IPv6
		Specify the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xx
	Authenticate Error Trap	Select the check box to notify Authenticate Error Trap.

 $^{^{*1}}$ The default value can be changed by using **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

SNMP v3

Purpose:

To edit the detailed settings of SNMP v3 protocol.

To enter this page, click Edit SNMP v3 Properties in the SNMP page.

Values:

Administrator Account	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the administrator account.
rammistrator recount		
	User Name	Enters the user name of the administrator account.
	Authentication Password	Sets the authentication password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Authentication Password	Confirms the set password.
	Privacy Password	Sets the privacy password of the administrator account using 8 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter Privacy Password	Confirms the set password.
Print Drivers / Remote	Account Enabled	Select the check box to enable the print drivers and remote client account.
Client Account	Reset to default Password	Click to reset the password for the print drivers and remote client account to default.

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

 $^{^{*2}}$ This item is available only when **Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **Enable**.

SNTP

Purpose:

To configure the SNTP server settings in order to perform time synchronization through SNTP.

Values:

SNTP	IP Address / Host Name	Sets the IP address or the host name of the SNTP server.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 120 seconds.
	Time Synchronization Interval	Sets the interval for performing time synchronization using SNTP.
	Last Connection Time	Displays the last date and time when your printer was connected to the SNTP server.
	Connection Status	Displays the status of the connections between the SNTP server and your printer.

AirPrint

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting of AirPrint.

AirPrint	LAN1*9	Enable	AirPrint Click to enable the printer for AirPrint.
		Name	Enters the name that is to be displayed as an AirPrint printer.
		Location	Sets the location of the printer.
		Geo-Location	Sets the physical location of the printer.
	LAN2*10	Name	Enters the name that is to be displayed as an AirPrint printer.
Supply Levels	Cyan Toner Cartridge	Displays the cya	nn toner level.
	Magenta Toner Cartridge	Displays the ma	ngenta toner level.
	Yellow Toner Cartridge	Displays the yel	low toner level.
	Black Toner Cartridge	Displays the bla	ack toner level.

Google Cloud Print

Purpose:

To register the printer to Google Cloud Print.

Google Cloud Print*1	(Registration state)	Displays the Google Cloud Print registration state.
	Register This Device to Google Cloud Print	Click to register the printer to Google Cloud Print.
*1 Google Cloud Print can only be used when the machine is using IPv4.		

Dell Document Hub

Purpose:

To configure the connections to the Dell Document Hub Server.

Values:

Dell Document Hub	Dell Document Hub Server URL	Displays the URL to access the Dell Document Hub Server.
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the time duration until the connection becomes time-out.
	Polling Interval	Sets the interval time for polling.

Proxy Server

Purpose:

To configure the Proxy Server settings.

Values:

Proxy Server	Use Proxy Server	Sets whether to enable the use of a proxy server.
	Address to Bypass Proxy Server	Sets the address to bypass proxy server.
	Server Name	Sets the name of the proxy server.
	Port Number	Sets the port number from 1 to 65535.
	Authentication	Sets whether to enable authentication.
	Login Name	Sets the login name for the proxy server.
	Password	Sets the login password for the proxy server.
	Retype Password	Confirms the set password.

Wireless LAN



NOTE: Wireless LAN feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting for the wireless network.

To use the wireless adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.



NOTE: Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

Wireless Settings	SSID	Sets the name that identifies the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Network Type	Sets the network type from either Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless adapter for the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection for the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection for the printer.

setting without specifying an encryption from WEP, WPA-PSK, and WPA-Enterprese network. WPA-PSK TKIP*1, 2 Sets the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through wireless network. WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK Sets the WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES*1, 2 use through the wireless network. WPA-Enterprise TKIP*2, 3 Sets the WPA-Enterprise TKIP to use through the wireless network. WPA-Enterprise Sets the WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES*2, 3 Enterprise AES to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK*1, 2 Sets the Mixed Mode PSK to use through wireless network. Sets the Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK AES. Mixed Mode Sets the Mixed Mode Enterprise to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode Enterprise automatically selects the	Security Settings	Encryption	Select the encryption type from the list.	
WPA-PSK TKIP*1-2 Sets the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through wireless network.			No Security	Sets No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying an encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK, and WPA-Enterprise.
WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK Sets the WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES/WPA2-Enterprise TKIP to use through the wireless network.			WEP	Sets the WEP to use through the wireless network.
WPA-Enterprise TKIP "2-3" through the wireless network. WPA-Enterprise TKIP "2-3" through the wireless network. WPA-Enterprise AES "NPA2-Enterprise AES "NPA2-Enterprise AES "1-2" Sets the WPA-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK "1-2" Sets the Mixed Mode PSK to use through wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the eneryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK, or WPA2-PSK AES. Mixed Mode Enterprise "2-,3" Sets the Mixed Mode Enterprise at One WPA2-PSK AES. WEP Encryption Encryption Select the WEP key code from either WPA-Enter WPA-PSK or WPA2-Enterprise AES, or WPA2-Enterprise AES. WEP Key 1 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key at used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Sets the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key 4 through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter Pasphrase Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Sets the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. WEP Key 1 Sets the WEP key 4 again to			WPA-PSK TKIP*1, 2	Sets the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through the wireless network.
TKIP*2.3			WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES*1, 2	
AES/WPA2-Enterprise AES **2.3			WPA-Enterprise TKIP*2, 3	
wireless network. Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK. or WPA2-PSK AES. Mixed Mode Enterprise *2, 3 Sets the Mixed Mode Enterprise to use through the wireless network. Mixed Mode Enterprise automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-Enterprise AES. WEP Encryption Select the WEP key code from either Hex or Ascii. WEP Key 1 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 1 Enters the WEP key lagain to confirm it. WEP Key 2 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key again to confirm it. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Re-enter WEP Key 5 Ests the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise* Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise* EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.			AES/WPA2-Enterprise	Enterprise AES to use through the wireless
### Enterprise "2.3" through the wireless network. Mixed Mo Enterprise automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-Enterprise AES, or WPA2-Enterprise AES. #### WEP Key 1 Select the WEP key code from either Hex or Ascii.			Mixed Mode PSK*1, 2	automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK TKIP, WPA-PSK AES,
WEP Key 1 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 1 Enters the WEP key 1 again to confirm it. WEP Key 2 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. Transmit Key *5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise *4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the password.			Mixed Mode Enterprise*2, 3	through the wireless network. Mixed Mode Enterprise automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-Enterprise TKIP, WPA-Enterprise AES, or WPA2-
Re-enter WEP Key 1 Enters the WEP key 1 again to confirm it. WEP Key 2 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.	WEP	Encryption	Select the WEP key code fro	om either Hex or Ascii.
WEP Key 2 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase. Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		WEP Key 1		
Re-enter WEP Key 2 Enters the WEP key 2 again to confirm it. WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		Re-enter WEP Key 1	Enters the WEP key 1 again	to confirm it.
WEP Key 3 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		WEP Key 2		
Re-enter WEP Key 3 Enters the WEP key 3 again to confirm it. WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the password. Password Sets the password.		Re-enter WEP Key 2	Enters the WEP key 2 again	to confirm it.
WEP Key 4 Sets the WEP key set used through the wireless network only when W 128bit or WEP 64bit is selected for Encryption. Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase. Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		WEP Key 3		
Re-enter WEP Key 4 Enters the WEP key 4 again to confirm it. Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the password. Password Sets the password.		Re-enter WEP Key 3	Enters the WEP key 3 again	to confirm it.
Transmit Key*5 Sets the transmit key type from the list. WPA-PSK Passphrase Sets the passphrase. Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		WEP Key 4		
WPA-PSK Passphrase Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		Re-enter WEP Key 4	Enters the WEP key 4 again	to confirm it.
WPA-PSK Passphrase Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.		Transmit Key*5	Sets the transmit key type fr	om the list.
Re-enter Passphrase Enters the passphrase again to confirm it. WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.	WPA-PSK			
WPA-Enterprise*4 EAP-Identity Sets the EAP-Identity for the authentication. Authentication Method Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.				to confirm it.
Authentication Method Shows the authentication method. Login Name Sets the login name for the authentication. Password Sets the password.	WPA-Enterprise*4	-		
Password Sets the password.		Authentication Method	Shows the authentication m	ethod.
Password Sets the password.		Login Name	Sets the login name for the a	authentication.
		Password	Sets the password.	
		Re-enter Password	Enters the password again to	confirm it.

- *1 For encryption, AES or TKIP method is used.
- *2 This item is available only when **Infrastructure** is selected for **Network Type**.
- *3 For authentication and encryption by digital certificate, AES or TKIP method is used.
- *4 To activate the setting, import a certificate which supports wireless LAN (server/client) on the SSL/TLS pages, and enable the relevant certificate in advance.
- *5 $\,$ When ${\bf Auto}$ is selected for ${\bf Transmit}$ ${\bf Key},$ the key set specified for ${\bf WEP}$ ${\bf Key}$ 1 is used.

Wi-Fi Direct

Purpose:

To configure the detailed setting of the Wi-Fi Direct connection.

Values:

Wi-Fi Direct	Wi-Fi Direct	Sets whether to enable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.
	Group Role	Sets the group role of the printer.
	Device Name	Specifies the printer name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Confirm it when selecting the printer name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	WPS Setup	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using WPS.
	SSID (Character string following "DIRECT- **")	Specifies a name to identify the Wi-Fi Direct network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered. "DIRECT-" cannot be changed.
	Passphrase	Displays the passphrase. Confirm it when entering the passphrase into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
	IP Address	Displays the IP address of the Wi-Fi Direct adapter.
	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
	Connection Device	Displays the mobile name currently connected.
	Current Role	Displays the current group role of the printer.
	Current SSID	Displays the current SSID. Confirm it selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVRAM (non-volatile RAM) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize NVRAM of the printer from Reset Defaults in the Printer Settings menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM Memory and restart printer.	Click Start to initialize NVRAM, revert network settings to the factory default settings, and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click Start to reboot the printer.

Security

The Security tab includes Set Password, Authentication System, Kerberos Server, LDAP Server, LDAP Authentication, LDAP User Mapping, SSL/TLS, IPsec, 802.1x, IP Filter (IPv4), and SMTP Domain Filtering.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. This page can also be displayed by clicking Set Password in the left frame.



NOTE: To restore the password to the default (NULL), initialize the non-volatile memory (NVM).



NOTE: You can set the password for access to Admin Settings from Panel Lock in Printer Settings.

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 128 alphanumeric characters.
Re-enter Administrator Password	Confirms the set password.
Access denial by the authentication failure of the Administrator	Sets the amount of time the administrator should wait for the access to the printer setup from Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool . Sets the time period from 5 to 255 seconds. The access is denied if the time-out time is exceeded. If you set 0, this mode is disabled.

Authentication System

Purpose:

To specify the server authentication type, the server response time-out, or the search time-out.

Values:

Authentication Type (for Server Address/ Phone Book)	Authentication System Settings	Select the authentication system from the list.
Optional Information	Server Response Time- Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for response from the server. Sets the time period from 1 to 75 seconds.
	Search Time-Out	Sets the amount of time the printer should wait for searching for the server. Sets the time period from 5 to 120 seconds.

Kerberos Server

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the Kerberos server.

Kerberos Server (for Server Address/Phone Book)	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets the IP address or host name, and the port address. The port address must be 88 or between 5,000 and 65,535.
	Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
	Login Name	Enter the login name.
	Password	Enter the login password.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the login password again to confirm it.

LDAP Server

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP server.

Values:

Server Information (for Server	IP Address / Host Name & Port	Sets IP address or the host name, and the port address. The port address must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.
Address/Phone Book)	LDAP Server	Displays the current software information of the LDAP server.
Optional Information	Search Directory Root	Enters the search directory root.
(for Server Address/Phone Book)	Login Credentials to Access LDAP Server	Select credential used to access the LDAP server.
	Login Name	Enters the login name.
	Password	Enters the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
	Re-enter-Password	Enters the login password again to confirm it.
	Search Time-Out	Select Wait LDAP Server Limit to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select Wait to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
	Search Name Order	Sets the search order.
	Server Address Book	Select the check box to enable the server address book.
	Server Phone Book	Select the check box to enable the server phone book.



NOTE: Server Address Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server address book for the Scan to E-mail feature.



NOTE: Server Phone Book must be set to **On** before you can use the server phone book for the Fax function.

LDAP Authentication

Purpose:

To specify the LDAP server authentication method.

Values:

LDAP Authentication (for Server Address/ Phone Book)	Authentication Method	Shows the authentication method.
	Use Added Text String	Select whether to use the added text string from the list.
	Text String Added to User Name	Enter the added text string.

LDAP User Mapping

Purpose:

To specify the settings of the LDAP user mapping.

Common Name	Sets the attribute type of the common name set for the LDAP server.	
Surname	Sets the attribute type of the surname set for the LDAP server.	
Given Name	Sets the attribute type of the given name set for the LDAP server.	
E-mail Address	Sets the attribute type of the e-mail address set for the LDAP server.	
Fax Phone	Sets the attribute type of the fax phone number set for the LDAP server.	

SSL/TLS

Purpose:

To specify the settings for the SSL encryption communication to the printer, and set/delete the certificate used for IPsec, LDAPS, or Wireless LAN.

HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication*1	Select the check box to enable the HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication.	
HTTP-SSL/TLS Communication Port Number	Sets the port number, which is not identical with that of HTTP for SSL/TLS. This must be 443 or between 8000 and 9999.	
LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication*1	Select the check box to enable the LDAP, and access is established using SSL/TLS communication.	
SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication	Sets the type of SSL/TLS used to communicate with the SMTP server.	
Generate Self-Signed Certificate ^{*2}	ned Click to display the Generate Self-Signed Certificate page and to create a security certificat the page. The Generate Self-Signed Certificate button is available only when the self-signed certificate is not generated.	
	Public Key Method	Select the public key method of the self-signed certificate.
	Size of Public Key	Select the size of public key.
	Issuer	Sets the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
	Validity	Enters the valid days from 1 to 9999 days.
	Generate Signed Certificate	Click to generate the SSL self-signed certificate.
Upload Signed Certificate ^{*2}	Click to display the Upload Signed Certificate page and to upload the certificate file to the device from the page.	
	Password	Enter the password to upload the certificate file.
	Re-enter Password	Enter the password again for confirmation.
	File Name	Click Browse to browse the file name to upload to the device.
	Import	Click Import to upload the certificate file to the device.
Certificate Management ^{*2}	Click to display the Cert page.	tificate Management page and to manage a security certification from the
	Category	Select the device to certificate.
	Certificate Purpose	Select the connection to certificate.
	Certificate Order	Select the order to certificate.
	Display the List	Click to display the Certificate List page.
Delete All Certificates	Delete	Click to delete all the certificates.
Certificate List*2	Category	Displays the device to certificate selected at the Certificate Management page.
	Certificate Purpose	Displays the connection to certificate selected at the Certificate Management page.
	Issued To	Displays the list of certificate order.
	Validity	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
	Certificate Details	Click to display the Certificate Details page. The SSL/TLS page is displayed when no item in the Issued To column is selected.

Certificate Details ^{*2}	Category	Displays the device to certificate selected at the Certificate Management
		page or SSL/TLS page.
	Issued To	Displays the device to certificate.
	Issuer	Displays the issuer to certificate.
•	Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the device.
•	Public Key Method	Displays the public key method.
•	Size of Public Key	Displays the size of public key.
•	Valid From	Displays the time the certificate is valid.
•	Valid Until	Displays the time the certificate is invalid.
•	Status	Displays whether certificate is valid or not.
•	Certificate Purpose	Displays the purpose of certificate.
	Certificate Selection Status	Displays the type of device certificate you selected.
•	E-mail Address	Displayed only when an e-mail address is specified in the certificate.
•	Use this certificate	Click to apply this certificate to the device.
•	Delete	Click to delete this certificate.
•	Export This Certificate	Click to export the certificate to the other device.

 $^{^{\}ast 1}$ $\,$ This item is available only when the self-signed certificate has been generated.

IPsec

Purpose:

To specify the Security Architecture settings for Internet Protocol (IPsec) for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

IPsec Settings	Protocol	Select the check box to enable the protocol.
	Pre-Shared Key	Sets a shared key. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used.
	Re-enter Pre-Shared Key	Enters the shared key again to confirm it.
	Device Certificate	Displays the device certificate.
	IKE SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IKE SA from 5 to 28,800 minutes.
	IPsec SA Lifetime	Sets the lifetime for IPsec SA from 5 to 2,880 minutes.
	DH Group	Sets the DH group.
	PFS	Select the check box to enable the PFS setting.
	Remote peers IPv4 address	s Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Remote peers IPv6 address	s Sets the IP address to connect to.
	Non IPsec communication policy	Allows communication with a device which does not support IPsec.



NOTE: If IPsec is enabled with incorrect settings, you must disable it using the **IPsec** menu on the operator panel.

 $^{^{*2}}$ This item is effective only when connected via SSL/TLS (https). Only the administrator is allowed to display the pages.

802.1x

Purpose:

To specify the settings for IEEE 802.1x authentication for encrypted communication to the printer.

Values:

Configure 802.1x	Enable IEEE 802.1x	Select the check box to enable IEEE 802.1x authentication.		
	Authentication Method	EAP-MD5	Selects the authentication method to use for IEEE	
		EAP-MS- CHAPv2 PEAP/MS- CHAPv2	802.1x authentication.	
				Login Name: (Device Name)
	Password	Sets the login palphanumeric of	password for IEEE 802.1x authentication using up to 128 characters.	
	Re-enter Password	Confirms the s	et login password.	
	Certificate Validation	Select the chec	k box to enable Certificate Validation.	

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.

Values:

Access List	Address		addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a ue between 0 and 255 in each field.
	Address Mask		net mask that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a ue between 0 and 255 in each field.
	Active Mode	Reject	Rejects printing from specified network address.
		Accept	Permits printing from specified network address.
		Off	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.

SMTP Domain Filtering

Purpose:

To specify whether to restrict sending e-mails to specific domains only.



NOTE: This feature does not restrict sending e-mails through the E-Mail Alert feature.

Values:

SMTP Domain Filtering	Domain Filtering	Select the check box to enable Domain Filtering.
	Allow Domain List	Allows you to register up to five domains allowed for sending e-mails.

Copy Printer Settings

The Copy Printer Settings menu includes the Copy Printer Settings and Copy Printer Settings Report pages.

Copy Printer Settings

Purpose:

To copy the printer settings to one or more of the same model of the printer.

To copy the settings to another printer, specify the IP address and password of the printer to which the settings are copied in the IP Address text box and Password text box. Then, click the Copy the settings to the Host in the above list button. Copying the settings is complete. The connection time-out period is 60 seconds. After that, you can check whether the settings were copied to this page. And you need to check the Copy the settings to the Host in the above list and reboot the printer menu of the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool in the destination printer to verify if the settings were actually copied or not.

If the settings can be copied but the printer configuration is different, the settings of only the same items are copied. Printer settings are simultaneously copied to printers of up to 10 IP addresses.



NOTE: You cannot copy the Address Book when the destination printer has a fax job.

Copy Printer Settings Report

Purpose:

To verify whether the printer setting is copied to other printers successfully.



NOTE: The history is cleared by turning off the printer.

Print Volume

The Print Volume menu includes the Print Volume and Dell ColorTrack pages.

Purpose:

To verify the number of printed pages. This page can also be displayed by clicking Print Volume in the left frame.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Dell ColorTrack

Purpose:

To specify which users have access to color printing and to limit print volume per user.

Values:

ColorTrack Mode	Off Enables to print the data with no authentication information.	
	On	Restricts printing based on the print user information registered in the internal server.
Non Registered User	Sets whether to permit the printing of data with no authentication information. To permit the printing for non-account user, select the check box.	
Auto Color To Mono Print	Sets whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.	

ColorTrack Error Report Sets whether to automatically print error-related information if printing using ColorTrack results in an

User Registration*1

Click Edit User Registration to display the Edit Print User Registration page.

- To register a user, click Create to open the Print User Settings page.
- To delete a user, click Delete to open the Delete User page. Clicking Back returns the screen to the status prior to deleting the user.
- To confirm or change the registered user, click Confirm / Change to open the Print User Settings page.

Page.		
User Registration No.	Displays the user registration number. The Delete User button is displaye when the user is already registered.	
User Name	Sets the user name.	
Password	Sets the user password using 4 to 12 alphanumeric characters.	
Re-enter password	Enter the password again to confirm it.	
Color Mode Limitation	Sets whether to limit color printing.	
Upper Limit for Color Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for color printing.	
Cumulative Color Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for color printing.	
Upper Limit for Monochrome Print	Sets the maximum number of pages allowed for monochrome printing.	
Cumulative Monochrome Page Count	Displays the cumulative number of pages printed for monochrome printing.	

 $^{^{\}ast 1}$ $\,$ This item is displayed only when ColorTrack Mode is On.

Address Book

The Address Book menu includes the E-Mail Address, Server Address, and Phone Book pages.

E-Mail Address	E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
	E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
	Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.
Server Address	Server Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create server address entries.
Phone Book	FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
	FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

E-Mail Address

The E-mail Address page includes the following subpages.

E-Mail Address	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail address entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

E-Mail Address

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the E-Mail Address page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.	
ID	Displays the user ID.	
Name	Displays the user name. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.	
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.	
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.	
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.	
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.	

E-Mail Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address entries on the E-Mail Address page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Confirm / Change or Create on the E-Mail Address top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected user ID.	
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.	
Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.	
Delete*1	Click this button to delete the selected user.	
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.	
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.	
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.	
*1 This item is availa	able only when you click Confirm / Change	

E-Mail Address (Delete)

To delete the e-mail address entries registered on the E-Mail Address page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Delete on the E-Mail Address top page.

ID	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Displays the name of the user registered under the selected user ID.
Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the E-Mail Group page.

Values:

GroupID	Displays the group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the E-Mail Group page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Confirm / Change or Create on the E-Mail Group top page.

E-Mail Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete*1	Click this button to delete the current entry.
E-Mail Address	Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	ID	Displays the user ID.
		Select the check box on the left to create the group.
	Name	Displays the user name. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
	Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

^{*1} This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

E-Mail Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the E-Mail Group page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Delete on the E-Mail Group top page.

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Default Setup

Purpose:

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

Values:

Default Subject	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject.
Body Text	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address

Server Address

Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the Server Address page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID	Displays the server ID.
Name	Displays the file directory name. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the Server Address page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Confirm / Change or Create on the Server Address top page.

ID	Displays the sel	ected server ID.
Name	Allows you to vi	ew or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.
Server Type	Allows you to vi	ew the server type if you click Confirm / Change . Allows you to edit the server type if e.
	FTP^{*1}	Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol.
	SMB*1	Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address	Allows you to vi address.	ew or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server
Share Name*2	Allows you to vi	ew or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when Server Type is
Server Path	Allows you to vi	ew or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.
Server Port Number		ew or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave nk, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.

Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.
Re-enter Password	Confirms the set password.
Delete*3	Click this button to delete the current entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

^{*1} You can edit this item only when you click **Create**.

Server Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the server address entries registered on the Server Address page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Delete on the Server Address top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Phone Book

The Phone Book page includes the following subpages.

FAX Speed Dial	Allows you to view, edit, or create speed dial entries.
FAX Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.

FAX Speed Dial

Purpose:

To view the fax number entries registered on the FAX Speed Dial page.

Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial ID.
Name	Displays the assigned name for a speed dial ID.
Phone Number	Displays the speed dial code. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected speed dial code.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected speed dial code.

 $^{^{*2}}$ This item is available only when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**.

 $^{^{*3}}$ This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

FAX Speed Dial (Confirm/Change, Create)

To view or edit the speed dial entries on the FAX Speed Dial page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Confirm / Change or Create on the FAX Speed Dial top page.

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
Delete*1	Click this button to delete the entry for the speed dial code. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Speed Dial (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the speed dial entries registered on the FAX Speed Dial page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Delete on the FAX Speed Dial top page.

Values:

Speed Dial	Displays the selected speed dial code.
Name	Displays the name registered under the speed dial code.
Phone Number	Displays the fax number registered under the speed dial code.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group

Purpose:

To view the fax group entries registered on the FAX Group page.

ID	Displays a fax group ID.
Name	Displays the assigned group name. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm / Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the FAX Group page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Confirm / Change or Create on the FAX Group top page.

FAX Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
	Delete*1	Click this button to delete the current entry.
FAX Speed Dial	Speed Dial List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	Speed Dial	Displays the speed dial code. Select the check box on the left to add the speed dial code in the group.
Name	Name	Displays the name registered for the speed dial code. (Not in Use) is displayed when there is no registration.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

^{*1} This item is available only when you click **Confirm / Change**.

FAX Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the FAX Group page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click Delete on the FAX Group top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Tray Management

Use the Tray Management menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in tray 1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder.

MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Size*1	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Type ^{*1}	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Paper Size - Y ^{*1}	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.

MPF Custom Paper Size - X ^{*1}	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Display Tray Prompt ^{*1}	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
Tray 1 Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in tray l.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Paper Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in trayl.
Tray 2 Paper Size*2	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Paper Type ^{*2}	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - Y ^{*2}	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Custom Paper Size - X ^{*2}	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt ^{*2}	Sets whether to display a popup message that prompts the user to set the paper size and type when the paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
1st Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the first priority.
2nd Priority	Sets the paper source to be used as the second priority.
3rd Priority*2	Sets the paper source to be used as the third priority.

 ^{*1} This item is available only when Off in MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job is selected.
 *2 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Understanding the Tool Box Menus

The Tool Box allows you to view, specify, and diagnose the system settings.



NOTE: A Password dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on Tool Box when Panel Lock is set on the printer. In this case, input the password that you have already specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

Starting the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Tool Box. The screen to select the printer appears.
- 2 Click Network Connection or USB Connection, and then select the printer listed in Select From the Found



NOTE: If the printer is not listed in Select From the Found Printers when you click Network Connection, click Directly Input IP Address/Host Name and enter the IP address of the printer. For details about how to verify the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."



3 Click OK.

The Tool Box opens.

The Tool Box consists of the Printer Setting Reports, Printer Maintenance, and Diagnosis tabs.

Printer Setting Reports

The Printer Setting Reports tab includes the Printer Information, Menu Settings, Reports, TCP/IP Settings, Tray Settings, Default Settings, Fax Settings, and Panel Language pages.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the system information of the printer.

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays the service tag number of your printer.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code number.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of your printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of printing for the printer. Color Laser is displayed normally.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of your printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.
Color Printing Speed	Displays the speed for color printing.
Monochrome Printing Speed	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the menu settings of the printer.

System Settings - General	Power Saver Timer - Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Displays the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.
	Time Zone	Displays the selected time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
	Date Format	Displays the selected date format.
	Time Format	Displays the selected time format; 24 Hour or 12 Hour.
	mm / inch	Displays the measurement unit used on the operator panel.
	Low Toner Alert Message	Displays whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.
	OffHook Wake Up	Displays whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	RAM Disk	Displays whether to allocate RAM for the disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.
	Fax Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the fax numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
	E-mail Server Address Book	Displays whether to specify the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
System Settings - Audio Tone	Control Panel Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Invalid Key Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Machine Ready Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer becomes ready. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Copy Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a copy job is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Completed Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job other than copying is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Fault Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job ends abnormally. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.

	Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Out of Paper Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Low Toner Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the toner is low. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	NFC Authentication Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
System Settings - Timers	Auto Reset	Displays the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Fault Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	Job Time-out	Displays the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
System Settings -	Default Paper Size	Displays the default paper size.
Output Settings	Print ID	Displays where to print a user ID on the output paper.
	Print Text	Displays whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data (which is not supported by the printer) as text when the printer receives it.
	Banner Sheet Insert Position	Displays where to insert the banner sheet.
	Banner Sheet Specify Tray	Displays the banner sheet tray.
	Substitute Tray	Displays an indication to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.
	Letterhead 2 Sided	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.
	Enable A4<>Letter Switch	Displays whether to print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
	Report 2 Sided Print	Displays whether to print reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Use Another Tray	Displays whether to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.
Service Tools - Paper	Plain	Displays the plain paper density settings.
Density	Label	Displays the label paper density settings.
Service Tools - Auto Registration Adjustment	Auto Registration Adjustment	Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Service Tools - Non-Dell Toner	Non-Dell Toner	Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Service Tools - Adjust Altitude	Adjust Altitude	Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of the printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings.

Values:

System Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click this button to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
PCL Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL (Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language) fonts.
PCL Macros List	Click this button to print a list of the PCL Macro.
PS Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PS fonts.
PDF Fonts List	Click this button to print a list of the PDF fonts.
Job History	Click this button to print the Completed Jobs history of the printer.
Error History	Click this button to print the error history of the printer.
Print Meter	Click this button to print the report for the total number of pages printed.
Color Test Page	Click this button to print a color test page.
Protocol Monitor	Click this button to print the Protocol Monitor report.
Speed Dial	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as speed dial numbers.
Email Address Book	Click this button to print a list of all the addresses stored as address book information.
Server Address	Click this button to print a list of all the members stored as server address information.
Fax Activity	Click this button to print the report of faxes recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	Click this button to print a list of status of pending faxes.
Stored Documents*1	Click this button to print a list of the Stored Documents.
*1 Var. can print the list or	through an the DAM dials is enabled

You can print the list only when the RAM disk is enabled.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
IP Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.
Use Manual Address	Displays whether to set the IP address manually.
Manual Address	Displays the IP address of the printer.
Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.
	IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address Use Manual Address Manual Address

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To display the tray settings of the printer.

Values:

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).
	MPF Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Displays whether to use the printer driver settings for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	Tray 1 Display Tray Prompt	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in trayl.
	Tray 1 Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of tray1.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in trayl.
	Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
	Tray 1 Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of trayl.
	Tray 2 Display Tray Prompt ^{*1}	Displays a popup menu that prompts to set the paper size and type when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2).
	Tray 2 Paper Size*1	Displays the paper size setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Size - Y ^{*1}	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Custom Size - X*1	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.
	Tray 2 Paper Type*1	Displays the paper type setting of the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Tray Priority	Tray Priority	Displays the priority order of the paper trays.

^{*1} This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Default Settings

Purpose:

To display the default settings for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB Direct Print functions of the printer.

Copy Defaults	Output Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Select Tray	Displays the input tray.
	Collation	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Reduce / Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	Original Type	Displays the type of the original document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.

	Color Saturation	Displays the default color saturation level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Color Balance (Yellow Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Color Balance (Yellow Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Color Balance (Yellow High)	Displays the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Color Balance (Magenta Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Color Balance (Magenta Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Color Balance (Magenta High)	Displays the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Color Balance (Cyan Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Color Balance (Cyan High)	Displays the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Color Balance (Black Low)	Displays the color balance level of low density black.
	Color Balance (Black Medium)	Displays the color balance level of medium density black.
	Color Balance (Black High)	Displays the color balance level of high density black.
	2 Sided Copying	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	2-Up	Displays whether the Multiple-Up feature is enabled.
	Margin Top / Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left / Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
Scan Defaults	File Format	Displays the file format in which scanned documents are to be saved.
	Output Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Original Size	Displays the paper size of the original document.
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Contrast	Displays the default contrast level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Auto Exposure Level	Displays the background suppression level.
	Margin Top / Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.

	Margin Left / Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.		
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.		
	TIFF File Format	Displays the TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.		
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.		
	Max E-mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.		
	File Name	Displays the mode used to name scanned documents.		
	Create Folder	Displays the folder to which scanned documents are to be saved.		
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.		
	2 Sided Scanning	Displays whether to scan both sides of a document.		
	Darken / Lighten	Displays the density level to be used for fax transmission.		
	Delayed Send	Displays the fax transmission start time.		
USB Direct Print	Output Color	Displays the default color mode.		
Defaults	Select Tray	Displays the default tray.		
	2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.		
	Layout	Displays the default paper layout when Layout is selected.		
	Collation	Displays whether to sort the print job.		
	Image Types	Displays the mode used to set the print image quality of documents.		

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To display the fax settings of the printer.

Fax Number	Displays the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.	
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.	
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of the sender that will be printed on the header of faxes.	
Line Type	Displays the line type; PSTN or PBX.	
Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.	
Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.	
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone / Fax .	
Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted stations.	
Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.	

Fax Forwarding Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.	
2 Sided Printing	Displays whether to print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Displays the tone to start Remote Receive.	
Discard Size	Displays whether to delete text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.	
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.	
Interval of Redial	Displays the redial interval.	
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.	
Tone / Pulse	Displays whether to use tone or pulse dialing.	
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.	
Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX)	
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.	
Fax Header ^{*1}	Displays whether to print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.	
ECM	Displays whether the Error Correction Mode (ECM) is enabled.	
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.	
Display Manual Fax Recipients	Displays whether to show the fax number of the recipient on the Sending Fax screen when manually sending a fax.	
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.	
Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.	
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.	
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to automatically print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.	

Panel Language

Purpose:

To display the panel language setting of the printer.

Panel Language	Displays the language that is used on the touch panel.

Printer Maintenance

The Printer Maintenance tab includes the System Settings - General, System Settings - Timers, System Settings -Output Settings, Service Tools, Tray Management, Panel Language, TCP/IP Settings, Network Settings, Copy Defaults, Scan Defaults, Fax Defaults, USB Direct Print Defaults, and Fax Settings pages.

System Settings - General

Purpose:

To configure the power management of the printer, date and time, mm/inch setting, alarm tones, job log auto print, and setting of the additional memory.

Power Saver Timer	Sleep ^{*1} Available Rang 1–30 minutes		Sets the amount of transition time to the Sleep mode after the printer finishes a job.	
	Deep Sleep ^{*1}	Available Range: 1–30 minutes	Sets the amount of transition time between the Sleep mode and the Deep Sleep mode.	
Date & Time	Time Zone Settings		Click to display the Time Zone Settings dialog box. Select the geographic region and time zone, and then click OK.	
	Time Zone		Displays the time zone selected on the Time Zone Settings dialog box.	
	Set Date		Sets the date.	
	Date Format		Sets the date format.	
	Set Time		Sets the time. You can select AM or PM when Time Format is set to 12 Hour.	
	Time Format		Sets the time format in 24 Hour or 12 Hour.	
mm / inch	Millimeters(mm)		Selects millimeter or inch as the default measurement	
	Inches(")		unit.	
Audio Tone	Control Panel Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.	
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator	
		Normal	panel input is correct.	
		Loud	_	
	Invalid Key Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.	
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator	
		Normal	panel input is incorrect.	
		Loud	_	
	Machine Ready Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer becomes ready.	
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer	
		Normal	becomes ready.	
		Loud	=	

	Tomo	Off	Does not emit a tone when copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when copying is
		Normal	complete.
		Loud	
	Job Completed Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when any other job except copying is complete.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when any other job
		Normal	except copying is complete.
		Loud	
	Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job ends
		Normal	abnormally.
		Loud	
	Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem
		Normal	occurs.
		Loud	
	Out of Paper Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer
		Normal	runs out of paper.
	Low Toner Alert Tone	Loud	
		Off	Does not emit a tone when the toner is low.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the toner is
		Normal	low.
		Loud	
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
		Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the
		Normal	printer performs auto clear.
		Loud	
	NFC Authentication	Off	Does not emit a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.
	Tone	Soft	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the NFC
		Normal	Authentication card input is correct or incorrect.
		Loud	
Low Toner Alert Message	On		Shows the alert message when the toner is low.
	Off		Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
OffHook Wake Up	On		Wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
	Off		Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Auto Log Print	On	Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	Off	Does not automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
RAM Disk	Off	Does not allocate RAM for the disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
	Available Range: 50–300MBytes	Allocates RAM for the disk file system automatically.
		(in 50 MB increments)
Fax Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for fax numbers.
	Off	Disables the server address book for fax numbers.
E-mail Server Address Book	On	Enables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
	Off	Disables the server address book for e-mail addresses.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new	settings	Click this button to apply the changes.

^{*1} When you specify 1 minute for **Sleep**, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.

Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for the power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the \bigcirc (Power Saver) button on the operator panel.

System Settings - Timers

Purpose:

To configure the auto clear time and time-out time.

Auto Reset	45 seconds	Sets the amount of time before the printer automatically resets the settings on the operator panel to the defaults — when no additional settings are made.	
	1 minute		
	2 minutes		
	3 minutes		
	4 minutes		
Fault Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling	
	Available Range: 3–300 seconds	a job when the job stops abnormally.	
Job Time-out	0	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for additional	
	Available Range: 5–300 seconds	data from the computer before it cancels the job.	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.	

System Settings - Output Settings

To configure the setting of the print ID, substitute tray, and other settings.

Default Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the default paper size.	
	Letter (8.5x11")		
Print ID	Off	Does not print the user ID.	
	Top Left	Prints the user ID on the specified location.	
	Top Right		
	Bottom Left		
	Bottom Right		
Print Text	On	Prints the received PDL data as text data.	
	Off	Does not print the received PDL data as text data.	
Banner Sheet Insert	Off	Does not insert the banner sheet.	
Position	Front	Sets where to insert the banner sheet.	
	Back		
	Front & Back		
Banner Sheet Specify Tray	MPF	Sets the tray for the banner sheet.	
	Tray 1		
	Tray 2*1		
Substitute Tray	Off	No tray size substitute accepted.	
	Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.	
	Nearest Size	Substitutes paper of nearest size.	
	Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.	
Letterhead 2 Sided	Disable	Does not print on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.	
	Enable	Prints on both sides of a sheet of letterhead paper.	
Enable A4<>Letter Switch	On	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).	
	Off	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.	
Report 2 Sided Print	1 Sided	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.	
	2 Sided	Prints reports on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
Use Another Tray	On	Sets to show a message to select another tray when the specified paper is not available in the paper tray.	
	Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job is not available.	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply nev	v settings	Click this button to apply the changes.	

Service Tools



CAUTION: Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Purpose:

To configure the paper density, the color registration adjustments, the initialization of the printer, and other settings.

Paper Density	Plain	Light		Sets plain paper density.
		Normal		_
	Label	Light		Sets label paper density.
		Normal		_
Color Registration Adjustments	Auto Correct			Click Start to perform color registration automatically.
	Print Color Re	egi Chart		Click Start to print a color registration chart.
	Registration Adjustments	LY(Left Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction)
		LM(Left Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	color adjustment values that are found in the color registration chart individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan.
		LC(Left Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	- Magenta, and Oyan.
		RY(Right Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	
		RM(Right Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	-
		RC(Right Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	•
		PY(Process Yellow)	Available Range: -9 to +9	-
		PM(Process Magenta)	Available Range: -9 to +9	-
		PC(Process Cyan)	Available Range: -9 to +9	.
Reset Defaults	User Fax Secti	on		Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	User Scan Section			Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	System Section			Initializes the system parameters.
Initialize Print Me	ter			Click Initialize Print Meter to initialize the Print Meter.
Non-Dell Toner	On			Enables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.
	Off			Disables the use of another manufacturer's toner cartridge.

Adjust Altitude	0 meter	Sets the altitude of the location where the
	1000 meters	printer is installed.
	2000 meters	
	3000 meters	
Apply New Settin	gs	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to apply the changes.

Tray Management

To specify the paper types and sizes, and the tray priority for the MPF, tray1, and the optional 550-sheet feeder respectively.

Tray Settings	MPF Display Tray	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the user	
	Prompt	Off	to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.	
	MPF Use Driver	On	Sets whether to use the printer driver settings	
	Settings for Print Job	Off	for the size and type of paper loaded in the MPI	
	MPF Paper Size*1	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.	
		A5 (148x210mm)	_	
		B5 (182x257mm)	_	
		Letter (8.5x11")	_	
		Folio (8.5x13")	_	
		Legal (8.5x14")	_	
		Executive (7.3x10.5")	- - - -	
		Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")		
		Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")		
		DL Env. (110x220mm)		
		C5 Env. (162x229mm)		
		Custom Size		
	$\begin{array}{c} \text{MPF Custom Size -} \\ \textbf{Y}^{*1} \end{array}$	Available Range: 127–355 mm (5.0–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.	
	MPF Custom Size - X*1	Available Range: 77–215 mm (3.0–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.	
	MPF Paper Type*1	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.	
		Plain Thick	_	
		Covers(106–163g/m ²)	_	
		Covers Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_	
		Coated(106–163g/m ²)	_	
		Coated Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_	
		Label	_	
		Envelope	_	

		_
	Recycled	_
	Letterhead	_
	Preprinted	_
	Prepunched	_
	Color	_
	Plain - Side 2	_
	Color - Side 2	_
	Plain Thick - Side 2	_
	Recycled - Side 2	_
Tray 1 Display Tray	On	Displays a popup message that prompts the use
Prompt	Off	to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the pape is loaded in trayl.
Tray 1 Paper Size	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the size of paper loaded in tray1.
	A5 (148x210mm)	_
	B5 (182x257mm)	_
	Letter (8.5x11")	_
	Folio (8.5x13")	_
	Legal (8.5x14")	_
	Executive (7.3x10.5")	_
	Custom Size	_
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Custom Size - X	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in tray1.
Tray 1 Paper Type	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in trayl.
	Plain Thick	_
	Covers(106–163g/m ²)	_
	Covers Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_
	Coated(106–163g/m ²)	_
	Coated Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_
	Recycled	=
		-
	Letterhead	
		-
	Preprinted	- -
		- - -
	Preprinted Prepunched	- - -
	Preprinted Prepunched Color Plain - Side 2	- - - -
	Preprinted Prepunched Color Plain - Side 2 Color - Side 2	- - - -
	Preprinted Prepunched Color Plain - Side 2 Color - Side 2 Plain Thick - Side 2	- - - - -
Tray 2 Display Tray	Preprinted Prepunched Color Plain - Side 2 Color - Side 2	- - - - - Displays a popup message that prompts the use

	Tray 2 Paper Size*2	Auto Sensed	Sets the size of paper loaded in the optional	
		Custom Size	550-sheet feeder.	
	Tray 2 Custom Size - Y*2	Available Range: 210–355 mm (8.3–14.0 inches)	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.	
	Tray 2 Custom Size - X*2	Available Range: 148–215 mm (5.8–8.5 inches)	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.	
	Tray 2 Paper Type*2	Plain	Sets the type of paper loaded in the optional	
		Plain Thick	550-sheet feeder.	
		Covers(106–163g/m ²)	_	
		Covers Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_	
		Coated(106–163g/m ²)	_	
		Coated Thick(164–216g/m ²)	_	
		Recycled	_	
		Letterhead	_	
		Preprinted	_	
		Prepunched	_	
		Color	_	
		Plain - Side 2	_	
		Color - Side 2	_	
		Plain Thick - Side 2	_	
		Recycled - Side 2		
Tray Priority	MPF->Tray1		Sets the priority order of the paper trays.	
	Tray1->MPF		- - - - -	
	MPF->Tray1->Tray2	2*2		
	MPF->Tray2*2->Tra	yl		
	Trayl->MPF->Tray2	2*2		
	Tray1->Tray2*2->Ml	PF		
	Tray2*2 ->MPF->Tra	ayl		
	Tray2*2 ->Tray1->M	PF		
Apply New Setting	S		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to a	inter to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	



NOTE: For details about the paper density for paper types, see "Paper Type Specifications."

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

Panel Language	English	Sets the language to be used on the touch panel.
	French	
	Italian	
	German	
	Spanish	
	Danish	
	Dutch	
	Norwegian	
	Swedish	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to appl	y new settings	Click this button to apply the changes.

TCP/IP Settings



NOTE: TCP/IP Settings is not available when IP Mode of the printer is set to IPv6 Mode.

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

*** . 11 . 3 f . 1			
IP Address Mode	AutoIP	Automatically sets the IP address.	
		A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.	
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.	
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.	
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.	
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.	
IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.	
		It is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	
Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.	
		It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255. 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.	
Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.	
		It is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.	
Apply New Settings	:	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	

Network Settings



NOTE: Network Settings is not available when the printer is connected using a USB cable.

To configure the setup of the printer using your web browser.

Values:

Print Server Settings*1	Display	Click to display the Print Server Setup page on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool .
Display of Dell	On	Displays the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Configuration Web Tool	Off	Does not display the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

 $^{^{*1}}$ This item is available only when **Display of Dell Configuration Web Tool** is set to **On**.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own copy settings.

Output Color	Full Color	Prints in color mode.
	Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	MPF	The paper is fed from the MPF.
	Tray 1	The paper is fed from tray l.
	Tray 2*1	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
Collation	Auto	Automatically sorts the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the copy job.
Reduce / Enlarge mm series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	A4->A5 (70%)	
	B5->A5 (81%)	
	A5->B5 (122%)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.
	A5->A4 (141%)	
	200%	
	Custom	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.
inch series	100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
	50%	Sets the default reduction ratio.
	Ledger->Letter (64 %)	
	Legal->Letter (78 %)	

	State (120 %)	Caraba I fash alaman at arta	
	Statement->Letter (129 %)	Sets the default enlargement ratio.	
	Statement->Legal (154 %)	<u></u>	
	200%		
	Custom	Sets the default enlargement / reduction ratio to a custom ratio.	
Custom Reduce / Enlarge	Available Range: 25–400%	Sets the custom enlargement / reduction ratio when you set Reduce / Enlarge to Custom .	
Original Size	Auto	Sets the document size automatically.	
	A4 (210x297mm)	Sets the document size.	
	A5 (148x210mm)		
	B5 (182x257mm)		
	Letter (8.5x11")		
	Folio (8.5x13")		
	Legal (8.5x14")		
	Executive (7.3x10.5")		
Original Type	Photo & Text	Improves the image quality of documents with both text and photos.	
	Text	Improves the image quality of documents with text.	
	Photo	Improves the image quality of documents with photos.	
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well	
	Darken +2	with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
	Darken +1		
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
	Lighten +1	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well	
	Lighten +2	with dark documents.	
	Lighten +3		
Sharpness	Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.	
	Normal	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.	
	Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.	
Color Saturation	High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.	
	Normal	The color saturation is the same as the original.	
	Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.	
Auto Exposure	Off	Does not suppress the background.	
	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.	
Auto Exposure Level	Normal	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.	
	High	Sets the background suppression level to High.	
	Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest .	
Color Balance	Yellow Low Density Available Range:	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.	

-3 to +3

	Yellow Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Yellow High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
	Magenta Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Magenta Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Magenta High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
	Cyan Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Cyan Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Cyan High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
	Black Low Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	Black Medium Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	Black High Density	Available Range: -3 to +3	Sets the color balance level of high density black.
2 Sided Copying	1 -> 1 Sided		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	1 -> 2 Sided		Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	2 -> 1 Sided		Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 -> 2 Sided		Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Output*2	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
	Binding of	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Original*3	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
2-Up	Off		Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto		Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	Manual		Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce / Enlarge.
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0-5	0 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left / Right		0 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle		0 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the middle margin.
Apply New Settings			After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer to app	ly new settings		Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own scan settings.

File Format	PDF		Saves the scanned image in PDF.
	Multi-Page TIFF		Saves the scanned image in Multi-Page TIFF.
	TIFF (1File per Page)		Saves the scanned image in TIFF (1File per Page).
	JPEG (1File	per Page)	Saves the scanned image in JPEG (1File per Page).
Output Color	Color		Scans in color mode.
	Black & Whi	te	Scans in black and white mode.
	Gray Scale		Scans in grayscale.
Resolution	200 dpi		Scans an image at 200 dpi.
	300 dpi		Scans an image at 300 dpi.
	400 dpi		Scans an image at 400 dpi.
	600 dpi		Scans an image at 600 dpi.
Original Size	A4 (210x297ı	nm)	Sets the document size.
	A5 (148x210ı	nm)	
	B5 (182x2571	nm)	
	Letter (8.5x1	1")	
	Folio (8.5x13")		_
	Legal (8.5x14	 ")	_
	Executive (7.3x10.5")		_
2 Sided	1 Sided		Scans one side of a document.
Scanning	2 Sided		Scans both sides of a document.
	Binding of	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Original	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
Darken /	Darken +3		Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well
Lighten	Darken +2		with light documents or faint pencil markings.
	Darken +1		
	Normal		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Lighten +1		Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works we
	Lighten +2		with dark documents.
	Lighten +3		
Sharpness	Sharpen		Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
	Normal		Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
	Soften		Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

^{*1} This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

 $^{^{*2}}$ This item is available only when **2 Sided Copying** is set to **1 -> 2 Sided** in the **Copy Defaults** page.

^{*3} This item is available only when 2 Sided Copying is set to 2 -> 1 Sided or 2 -> 2 Sided in the Copy Defaults page.

Contrast	High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
	Medium	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
	Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.
Auto Exposure	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Auto Exposure	Normal	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
Level	High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
	Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.
Margin Top / Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left / Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm (0.0–2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0-50 mm (0.0-2.0 inches)	Sets the value of the middle margin.
TIFF File Format	TIFF V6	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
	TTN2	Sets the TIFF file format to TTN2.
Image	High	Sets the image compression level to High.
Compression	Normal	Sets the image compression level to Normal.
	Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.
Max E-mail Size	Available Range: 50–16384 KBytes	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent within the range of 50 KB to 16384 KB.
File Name	Auto	Sets the default file name.
	Add Prefix	Adds a prefix to the file name.
	Add Suffix	Adds a suffix to the file name.
	Text String	Sets the texts that are added when Add Prefix or Add Suffix are selected.
Create Folder	On	Creates a folder when saving a scanned image.
	Off	Does not create a folder when saving a scanned image.
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer t	o apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own fax settings.

Resolution Standard		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.

	Super Fine		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.	
	Photo		Improves the output quality of the original. For documents containing photographic images.	
2 Sided Scanning 1 Sided			Scans one side of a document. Scans both sides of a document.	
	2 Sided			
	Binding of Original	Long Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.	
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.	
Darken / Lighten	Darken +3		Makes the documents darker than the original. Works well with light	
	Darken +2		documents or faint pencil markings.	
	Darken +1		_	
	Normal		Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
	Lighten +1		Makes the documents lighter than the original. Works well with dark	
	Lighten +2		documents.	
	Lighten +3		_	
Delayed Send	00:00-23:59*1		Sets the fax transmission start time in 24-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.	
	01:00–12:59*2	AM PM	Sets the fax transmission start time in 12-hour format when sending a fax at a specified time.	
Apply New Settin	gs		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to	apply new settir	ngs	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	
*1 This item is a	vailable only when	Time Format is se	t to 24 Hour in the System Settings - General page.	

This item is available only when ${\bf Time\ Format}$ is set to ${\bf 24\ Hour\ in\ the\ System\ Settings\ -\ General\ page}.$

USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own settings for USB Direct Print Defaults.

Output Color	Full Color		Prints in color mode.
	Black & White		Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF.
	Tray 1		The paper is fed from tray1.
	Tray 2*1		The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
2 Sided Printing	1 Sided		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2 Sided		Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Output	Long Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
Layout	Off		Prints without scaling.
	1-Up		Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
	2-Up		Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

 $^{^{*2}}$ This item is available only when **Time Format** is set to **12 Hour** in the **System Settings - General** page.

	4-Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Collation	Collated	Sorts the print job.
	Uncollated	Does not sort the print job.
Image Types	Auto	Prints files in the Text mode and in the Photos (Standard Quality) mode.
	Photos(Standard Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the standard quality.
	Photos(High Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the high quality.
	Text	Prints the text document at the standard quality.
Apply New Set	tings	After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.
Restart printer	to apply new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.
*1		

^{*1} This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To specify the fax settings.

Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Fax Header Name		Sets the sender's name to be printed on the header on faxes.
Line Type	PSTN	Sets the default line type to PSTN.
	PBX	Sets the default line type to PBX.
Line Monitor	Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
	Medium	_
	High	_
DRPD Pattern	Pattern1–7	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
Receive Mode	Telephone	Sets the default fax receiving mode to Telephone.
	Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to Fax.
	Telephone / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to Telephone / Fax.
	Ans Machine / Fax	Sets the default fax receiving mode to Ans Machine / Fax.
	DRPD	Sets the default fax receiving mode to DRPD.
Ring Tone Volume	Off	Turns the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone / Fax.
	Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
	Medium	_
	High	_
Auto Receive Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.

Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call in 0 to 255 seconds.
Junk Fax Setup	On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
	Off	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Sent Fax Forward	Off	Does not forward any of the incoming faxes to a specified destination
	Forward	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.
	Print and E-mail	Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.
Fax Forwarding Num	ber	Sets the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
2 Sided Printing	On	Prints the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Off	Does not print the received fax on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive	On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
	Off	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Receive Tone	Available Range: 00–99	Sets the tone to start Remote Receive.
Discard Size	Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of the page.
	Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper.
Redial Attempts	Available Range: 0–13	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13.
Interval of Redial	Available Range: 1–15 minutes	Sets the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes.
Resend Delay	Available Range: 3–255 seconds	Sets the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds.
Tone / Pulse	Tone	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
	Pulse (10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (10PPS).
	Pulse (20PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (20PPS).
Prefix Dial	On	Sets a prefix dial number.
	Off	Does not set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Fax Cover Page	On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
-	Off	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
Fax Header*1	On	Prints the information of the sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of the sender on the header of faxes.

ECM	On	Enables the ECM (Error Correction Mode). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.	
	Off	Disables the ECM.	
Modem Speed	2.4 kbps	Allows you to adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or	
	4.8 kbps	reception error occurs.	
	9.6 kbps		
	14.4 kbps		
	33.6 kbps		
Display Manual Fax	On	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.	
Recipients	Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.	
Fax Activity	Auto Print	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.	
	No Auto Print	Does not print a fax activity report automatically.	
Fax Transmit	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.	
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.	
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.	
Fax Broadcast	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.	
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.	
	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.	
Fax Protocol	Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.	
	Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.	
	Print Disable	Does not print the protocol monitor report.	
Apply New Settings		After you change the settings, click this button to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to app	oly new settings	Click this button to restart the printer and apply the changes.	

Diagnosis

The Diagnosis tab includes the Chart Print and Environment Sensor Info pages.

Chart Print

Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosis of the printer. The chart is printed to A4 or letter size paper. Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Prints full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also prints pages to check the pitch. A total of five pages are output.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Prints a chart to check for ghost printing. One page is printed.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black are printed with varying density. One page is printed.
Banding Detection Chart	Prints charts to check which color the banding occurred and the distance between each band.
MQ Chart	Prints charts to check for the banding in A4 or Letter.

Alignment Chart	Prints a chart to check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper. One
	page is printed.

Environment Sensor Info

Purpose:

To print the internal environment sensor information of the printer to Result.

Values:

Get Environment Sensor	Click this button to confirm the internal environment sensor information of the printer such as
Info	temperature and humidity.

Resetting Defaults

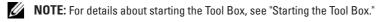
After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, Scan to E-mail, Fax, Scan to Network, Scan to PC, PC Scan, Scan to USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

When Using the Tool Box

1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Tool Box.



The Tool Box opens.

- 2 Click the Printer Maintenance tab.
- **3** Select Service Tools from the list at the left side of the page.

The Service Tools page appears.

4 Click User Fax Section, User Scan Section, or System Section.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the Admin Settings can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your printer driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

Report / List

Use the Report/List menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings of the printer menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

"Understanding Fonts"

PCL Macros List

Purpose:

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

PS Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

See also:

"Understanding Fonts"

PDF Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

Job History

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Print Meter

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as speed dial numbers.

Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Server Address

Purpose:

To print the list of all members stored as Server Address information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

Purpose:

To print the list of status of pending faxes.

Stored Documents

NOTE: Stored Documents feature is available only when RAM Disk under System Settings is enabled.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.

Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the (information) button.
- 2 Tap Report/List.
- **3** Tap **▼** until the desired report or list appears, and then select that report or list.
- 4 Tap Print.

The selected report or list is printed.

Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Tool Box.
 - **NOTE:** For details about starting the **Tool Box**, see "Starting the Tool Box."

The Tool Box opens.

- **2** Ensure that the **Printer Setting Reports** tab is open.
- **3** Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.

The Reports page appears.

4 Click the button for the desired report or list.

The report or list is printed

Connection Status

Use the Connection Status menu to disconnect the device connected via Wi-Fi Direct™.



NOTE: The Connection Status menu is displayed only when the printer is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.

Disconnecting the device connected via Wi-Fi Direct

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap Connection Status.
- **3** Tap the device name to disconnect.
- 4 Tap Disconnect Now or Disconnect and Reset Passphrase.
- 5 Tap Yes.

The selected device is successfully disconnected.

Admin Settings

Use the Admin Settings menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Phone Book

Use the Phone Book menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Individuals

Purpose:

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

Groups

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to six group dial codes can be registered.

PCL

Use the PCL menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the default paper tray.

Values:

Auto*
MPF
Trayl
Tray2*1
*1 This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4
$(210x297mm)^{*1}$
A5
(148x210mm)
B5
(182x257mm)
Letter
(8.5x11")
Folio
(8.5x13")
Legal
(8.5x14")
Executive
(7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10

(4.1x9.5")

Monarch Env.
(3.9x7.5")
DL Env.
(110x220mm)
C5 Env.
(162x229mm)
Custom Paper Size
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.
inch series
Letter
$(8.5x11")^{*1}$
Folio
(8.5x13")
Legal
(8.5x14")
A4
(210x297mm)
A5
(148x210mm)
B5
(182x257mm)
Executive
(7.3x10.5")
Envelope #10
(4.1x9.5")
Monarch Env.
(3.9x7.5")
DL Env.
(110x220mm)
C5 Env.
(162x229mm)
Custom Paper Size
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.



NOTE: Selecting a custom size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait*	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided [*]		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Flip on Long Edge [*]	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

CG Times	LetterGothic	CourierPS
CG Times It	LetterGothic It	CourierPS Ob
CG Times Bd	LetterGothic Bd	CourierPS Bd
CG Times BdIt	Albertus Md	CourierPS BdOb
Univers Md	Albertus XBd	SymbolPS
Univers MdIt	Clarendon Cd	Palatino Roman
Univers Bd	Coronet	Palatino It
Univers BdIt	Marigold	Palatino Bd
Univers MdCd	Arial	Palatino BdIt
Univers MdCdIt	Arial It	ITCBookman Lt
Univers BdCd	Arial Bd	ITCBookman LtIt
Univers BdCdIt	Arial BdIt	ITCBookmanDm
AntiqueOlv	Times New	ITCBookmanDm It
AntiqueOlv It	Times New It	HelveticaNr
AntiqueOlv Bd	Times New Bd	HelveticaNr Ob
CG Omega	Times New BdIt	HelveticaNr Bd
CG Omega It	Symbol	HelveticaNrBdOb
CG Omega Bd	Wingdings	N C Schbk Roman
CG Omega BdIt	Line Printer	N C Schbk It
GaramondAntiqua	Times Roman	N C Schbk Bd
Garamond Krsv	Times It	N C Schbk BdIt

Garamond Hlb	Times Bd	ITC A G Go Bk
GaramondKrsvHlb	Times BdIt	ITC A G Go BkOb
Courier*	Helvetica	ITC A G Go Dm
Courier It	Helvetica Ob	ITC A G Go DmOb
Courier Bd	Helvetica Bd	ZapfC MdIt
Courier BdIt	Helvetica BdOb	ZapfDingbats

Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

DESKTOP	ISO L5	PC-8 TK
DNGBTSMS	ISO L6	PI FONT
ISO-11	LEGAL	PS MATH
ISO-15	MATH-8	PS TEXT
ISO-17	MC TEXT	ROMAN-8*
ISO-21	MS PUB	SYMBOL
ISO-4	PC-1004	WIN 3.0
ISO-6	PC-775	WINBALT
ISO-60	PC-8	WINGDINGS
ISO-69	PC-850	WIN L1
ISO L1	PC-852	WIN L2
ISO L2	PC-8 DN	WIN L5

Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts.

Values:

12.00 [*]	Sets the values in increments of 0.25.
Available Range: 4.00 – 50.00	_

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

NOTE: The Font Size menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

See also:

"Pitch and Point Size"

Font Pitch	
Purpose:	
To specify the font pite	ch for scalable mono spaced fonts.
Values:	
10.00*	Sets the value in increments of 0.01.
Available Range: 6.00–24	1.00
	number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For non-scalable mono spaced ayed, but cannot be changed.
NOTE: The Font	Pitch menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.
See also:	
"Pitch and Point Size"	
Form Line	
Purpose:	
To set the number of li	nes in a page.
Values:	
mm series	
64 mm ^{*1}	Sets the value in increments of 1 mm.
Available Range: 5–128 r	 mm
	ecific factory default values.
inch series	
60 inches*1	Sets the value in increments of 1 inch.
Available Range: 5–128 i	
*1 Denotes country-sp	ecific factory default values.
	nount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the Form Line and items. Select the correct Form Line and Orientation before changing Form Line.
See also:	
"Orientation"	
Quantity	
Purpose:	
To set the default print	quantity. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the printer driver. Value er driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)
Values:	

Available Range: 1-999

Sets the value in increments of 1.

Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On*	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

Hex Dump

Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With Hex Dump selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable*	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when printing in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable [*]	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

LineTermination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Off*	The line termination command is not added.
	CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added.
	CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black*	Prints in the black and white mode.	
Color	Prints in the color mode.	

Ignore Form Feed

Purpose:

To specify whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

Values:

Off*	Disables the Ignore Form Feed feature.
On	Enables the Ignore Form Feed feature.

PS

Use the PS menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript emulation printer language.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

PS Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs error contents for a PostScript error.

The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.



NOTE: Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

PS Job Time-out

To specify the execution time for one PostScript job. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Off*		Job time-out does not occur.
On	l minute [*]	A PostScript error occurs if processing is not completed after the
	Available Range: 1-900 minutes	specified time.

Paper Select Mode

To specify the way to select the tray for PostScript mode. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.	
Select From Tray	n Tray The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular Post Script printers.	

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print

Values:

Color*	Prints in the color mode.
Black	Prints in the black and white mode.

PDF

Use the PDF menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
Available Range: 1–999	_

2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

1 Sided [*]		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Flip on Long Edge*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Flip on Short Edge	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

Print Mode

Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

Values:

Normal*	For documents with normal sized characters.	
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.	
High Speed	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.	

PDF Password

Purpose:

To specify the password to print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF.

Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Values:

Collated	Sorts the job.
Uncollated*	Does not sort the job.

Output Size

Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

A4 ^{*1}	
Letter*1	
Auto	
*1 The default paper size is displayed.	

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

Auto %*
100% (No Zoom)
Booklet
2 Pages Up
4 Pages Up

Default Color

Purpose:

To specify the default output color.

Values:

Color (Auto)*	
Black	

Network

Use the Network menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet/Wireless



NOTE: When using a wired network, Ethernet is displayed. When the optional wireless adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, Wireless is displayed.

Purpose:

To confirm or specify network settings.

Values:

Wireless Status



NOTE: Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To confirm the wireless communication status.

Status	Good	
	Acceptable	
	Low	
	No Reception	
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.	
Encryption Type	Displays the encryption type.	

Wireless Setup Wizard



NOTE: Wireless Setup Wizard is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

To configure the wireless network interface.

Select access point			Select the access	point from the list.
	WEP Key			an access point using WEP as the enter the WEP key.
	PassPhrase		When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the pass phrase.	
Manual SSID Setup	Enter SSID			to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 aracters can be entered.
	Infrastructure			configure the wireless setting through the n as a wireless router.
		No Security	*	urity to configure the wireless setting ng an encryption type from WEP, WPA-VPA-PSK-AES.
		Mixed mode PSK*	type of Mixed m selects the encry	ore the wireless setting with the encryption ode PSK. Mixed mode PSK automatically ption type from either WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES.
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA-PSK-TKIP.	
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configu type of WPA2-PS	re the wireless setting with the encryption SK-AES.
			Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63. (hex: 0-9, a-f, A-F, 16 to 64 characters)
		WEP	For 64bit keys, u	EP key to use through the wireless network p to 10 hexadecimal characters can be bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from Auto* WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	Ad-hoc		Select to configure the wireless setting without the acces point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security*	Select to configue	re the wireless setting without specifying vpe from WEP.
		WEP	For 64bit keys, u	EP key to use through the wireless network p to 10 hexadecimal characters can be bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters

Specifies the transmit key from WEP Key 1*, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4. Transmit Key

WPS Setup



NOTE: WPS Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

Values:

Push Button Control*	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting with WPS-PBC.
PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your computer.

IP Mode

Purpose:

To configure the IP mode.

Values:

Dual Stack [*]	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.	
IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.	
IPv6 Mode	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.	

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Get IP Address	AutoIP [*]	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255 that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as 255.255.0.0.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
IP Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask		When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 255.255.255.255 cannot be specified as the subnet mask.

Gateway Address	When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format nnn.nnn.nnn. Each octet that makes up nnn.nnn.nnn is a value in the range of 0 to 254. 127 and any value in the
	range of 224 to 254 cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.

IPsec



NOTE: IPsec feature is available only when **IPsec** is enabled on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Purpose:

Disables IPsec.

Reset Wireless



NOTE: Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

Connection Speed



NOTE: Connection Speed feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.	
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.	
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.	
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.	
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.	
1000BASE-T Full	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.	

Wi-Fi Direct



NOTE: When the optional wireless adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, Wi-Fi Direct is displayed.

Purpose:

To configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.

Wi-Fi Direct	Disable Disables the Wi-Fi Direct network.	
	Enable	Enables the Wi-Fi Direct network.
Group Role	Auto [*]	Use this option when you connect a Wi-Fi Direct certified device to the printer.

	Group Owner	to the printer. Setting possible for devices	n you connect a device that is not Wi-Fi Direct certified ng the printer to become the group owner makes it that are not Wi-Fi Direct certified to discover this f the printer will be then displayed in the list of wireless 'i-Fi mobile device.
Device Name		Specifies the printer name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Confirm it when selecting the printer name on your Wi-Fi certified device.	
Connection Status Displays the statu		Displays the status of your Wi-Fi mobile of	of the Wi-Fi Direct connection between the printer and levice.
	Disconnect now	Disconnects the Wi	-Fi Direct connection.
	Disconnect and Reset Passphrase	Disconnects the Wi-Fi Direct connection and resets the passphrase.	
SSID		Displays the name that identifies the Wi-Fi Direct network. You can also specify the name with up to 32 alphanumeric characters ("DIRECT-XX" cannot be changed). Confirm it when selecting the Wi-Fi Direct network name on your Wi-Fi mobile device.	
Passphrase Displays the pass phrase. Confi Wi-Fi mobile device.		rase. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your	
	Print Passphrase	Prints the pass phra Wi-Fi mobile device	se. Confirm it when entering the pass phrase into your e.
	Reset Passphrase	Resets the pass phrase.	
WPS Setup		Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using WPS.	
	Push Button Configuration*	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network with WPS-PBC.	
	PIN Code	Configures the Wi-Fi Direct network using PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.	
		Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your Wi-Fi mobile device.
		Reset Code	Resets the PIN code.

Protocols

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again. Values:

I DD	D: .11.	Die 11 ede I DD ee d	
LPD	Disable	Disables the LPD port.	
	Enable*	Enables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.	
Port9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.	
	Enable [*]	Enables the Port9100 port.	
FTP	Disable	Disables FTP port.	
	Enable [*]	Enables FTP port.	
IPP	Disable	Disables IPP port.	
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.	
SMB TCP/IP	Disable	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.	
	Enable*	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.	

SMB NetBEUI	Disable	Disables SMB NetBEUI port.	
	Enable*	Enables SMB NetBEUI port.	
WSD Print	Disable	Disables Web Services on Devices (WSD) print.	
	Enable*	Enables WSD print.	
WSD Scan	Disable	Disables WSD scan.	
	Enable*	Enables WSD scan.	
Network TWAIN	Disable	Disables Network TWAIN.	
	Enable*	Enables Network TWAIN.	
SNMP UDP	Disable	Disables the SNMP UDP port.	
	Enable*	Enables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.	
E-mail Alert	Disable	Disables the E-mail Alert feature.	
	Enable*	Enables the E-mail Alert feature.	
Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool	Disable	Disables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.	
	Enable*	Enables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.	
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables Bonjour (mDNS).	
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).	
Telnet	Disable	Disables Telnet.	
	Enable*	Enables Telnet.	
Update Address Book	Disable	Disables Update Address Book.	
	Enable*	Enables Update Address Book.	
HTTP-SSL/TLS	Disable*	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.	
	Enable	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.	
Google Cloud Print	Disable [*]	Disables Google Cloud Print.	
	Enable	Enables Google Cloud Print.	
Print from Dell Document	Disable	Disables Print from Dell Document Hub.	
Hub	Enable*	Enables Print from Dell Document Hub.	
Scan to Dell Document Disable		Disables Scan to Dell Document Hub.	
Hub	Enable*	Enables Scan to Dell Document Hub.	

Advanced Settings

Purpose:

To specify advanced network settings.

IP Filter



NOTE: IP Filter feature is available only for LPD or Port9100.

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

n (n is 1-5)	IP Address		Sets the IP address for Filter n.
	Subnet Mask		Sets the address mask for Filter n.
	Mode Off [*]		Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.
		Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
		Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.

IEEE 802.1x



NOTE: IEEE 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using Ethernet cable and it is available only when the IEEE 802.1x authentication is enabled.

Purpose:

To disable IEEE 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

PS Data Format

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the PS Data Format settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.	
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.	
BCP	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.	
TBCP	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.	
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.	

Reset LAN

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Delete All Certificates

To delete all certificates of the printer. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all certificates are deleted.

Fax Settings

Use the Fax Settings menu to configure the basic fax settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Fax Line Settings

Purpose:

To configure basic settings for the fax line.

Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.



NOTE: Ensure to specify Fax Number before using Junk Fax Setup.

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the printer is used.

TI	Destruct
riungary	Portugal
Iceland	Puerto Rico
Ireland	Romania
Italy	Russia
Jamaica	Saudi Arabia
Jordan	Singapore
Latvia	Slovakia
Liechtenstein	Slovenia
Lithuania	South Africa
Luxembourg	Spain
Malaysia	Sweden
Malta	Switzerland
Mexico	Thailand
Netherlands	Tunisia
New Zealand	Turkey
Nicaragua	U.A.E.
Norway	United Kingdom
Panama	United States
Poland	Unknown*
	Ireland Italy Jamaica Jordan Latvia Liechtenstein Lithuania Luxembourg Malaysia Malta Mexico Netherlands New Zealand Nicaragua Norway Panama

Fax Header Name

Purpose:

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Low.
Medium*	Sets the volume of the line monitor to Medium.
High	Sets the volume of the line monitor to High.

DRPD Pattern

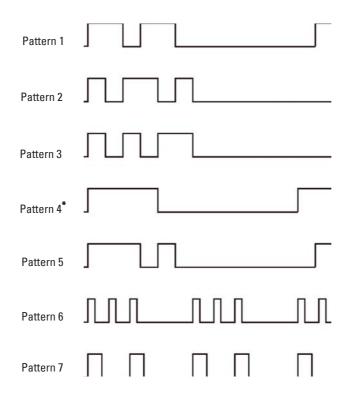
Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern 1-7

DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:



Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Incoming Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for incoming fax.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by tapping Manual Receive in On Hook and then tapping Receive. For details about Manual Receive, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode."
Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
Telephone / Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Receive Tel/Fax, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your country is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Low.
Medium	Sets the volume of the ring tone to Medium.
High*	Sets the volume of the ring tone to High.

Auto Receive Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic fax reception.

Values:

Auto Receive Fax	0 seconds [*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	6 seconds [*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	

Understanding the Printer Menus | 235

Auto Receive Ans/Fax	21 seconds*	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 0-255 seconds	

Junk Fax Setup

Purpose:

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Secure Receive



NOTE: Secure Receive feature is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

To specify whether to require a password to receive faxes, and to set or change the password.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable* Does not require a password to receive faxes.		
	Enable	Requires a password to receive faxes.	
Change Password*1	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to receive faxes.	
		Sets or changes the password required to receive faxes.	

^{*1} This item is available only when Secure Receive Set is set to Enable.

Sent Fax Forward



NOTE: Print and E-mail feature is available only when E-mail Alert information and Forwarding E-mail Address are registered. For information on e-mail alert, see "E-Mail Alert" and on forwarding e-mail address information, see "Fax Settings."

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Off*		Does not forward incoming faxes.	
Forward		Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.	
Print and Forward		Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified destination.	
	Forwarding Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.	
Print and E-mail*1, 2		Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified e-mail address.	
Forward to Server		Forwards incoming faxes to a specified server address.	
Print and Forward to Server		Prints incoming faxes and also forward them to a specified server address.	

 $^{^{*1}\,\,}$ This item is available only when the E-mail $\,$ Alert information is registered.

^{*2} This item is available only when Forwarding E-mail Address is registered.

2 Sided Print

To set the duplex printing for fax.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform duplex printing.
On	Performs duplex printing.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*		Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On		Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

Off*	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.	
On	Discards any excess images or text.	
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.	

Transmission Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for transmitting fax.

Auto Redial Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic redial.

Values:

Redial Attempts	3*	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The value is set in increments of 1.
	Available Range: 0-13	
Interval of Redial	l minute [*]	Sets the interval between redial attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 minute.

Available Range: 1-15 minutes

Resend Delay	8 seconds*	Sets the interval between re-send attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	Available Range: 3-255	seconds

Tone / Pulse

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Uses tone dialing.
Pulse(10PPS)	Sets "DP (10PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
Pulse(20PPS)	Sets "DP (20PPS)" (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*		Does not set a prefix dial number.
On		Sets a prefix dial number.
	Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Fax Header

Purpose:

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.



NOTE: If United States is selected for the setting of Country, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to On and cannot be changed. For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disables the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps	
4.8 Kbps	
9.6 Kbps	
14.4 Kbps	
33.6 Kbps*	

Display Manual Fax Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the Sending Fax screen when manually sending a fax.

Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
On*	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.

Fax Reports

Purpose:

To configure settings for fax reports.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.	
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.	
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.	

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.	
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.	
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.	

Fax Protocol

Purpose:

To set whether to print the protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable*	Does not print the protocol monitor report.

System Settings

Use System Settings to configure the power saving mode, warning tones, time-out duration, display language, and job log auto print settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

General

Purpose:

To configure general settings for the printer.

Power Saver Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Sleep	10 minutes*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it
	Available Range: 1–30 minutes	finishes a job.

Deep Sleep	20 minutes*	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Deep Sleep mode after it
	Available Range: 1–30 minutes	has entered Sleep mode.

When you specify 1 minute for Sleep, the printer enters power saver mode 1 minute after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minute if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time.

Select a value between 1 and 30 minutes for power saver mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

Values:

Time Zone			Sets the time zone.
Date			Sets the date depending on the Format settings.
	Format		Sets the date format.
Time			Sets the time.
	Format	12 Hour	Sets the time in 12-hour format.
		24 Hour	Sets the time in 24-hour format.

mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters(mm)*	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
Inches(")	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.



NOTE: The default for mm/inch varies depending on other settings, such as Country and Document Size.

Display Brightness

Purpose:

To adjust the screen brightness of the touch panel.

5*	Sets the brightness in ten levels, with ten being the brightest.
Available Range: 1-10	_

Audio Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Control Panel	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Normal	1 1 1
	Loud	
Invalid Key	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Machine Ready	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
,	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Copy Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Job Completed	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert	Off	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
	Normal*	<u> </u>
	Loud	

Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.	
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.	
	Normal	_	
	Loud	_	
NFC Authentication Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.	
	Soft	Emits a tone when an NFC card is placed on the NFC reader for authentication.	
	Normal*	_	
	Loud	_	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.	
	Soft	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.	
	Normal*	_	
	Loud	_	

Low Toner Alert Message

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

OffHook Wake Up

Purpose:

To specify whether to wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not wake up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
On	Wakes up from Sleep or Deep Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

Print logs can also be printed using the Report/List menu.

RAM Disk

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Off		Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
On*	100 MB	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.
	Available Range: 50-300 MB	



NOTE: Restart your printer when you change the settings for the RAM Disk menu.

Fax Server Phone Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.

Off [*]	Does not search the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Phone Book for the LDAP server.



NOTE: You can search the phone numbers only from the local Phone Book when Fax Server Phone Book is set to Off.

E-mail Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off*	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.



NOTE: You can search the e-mail addresses only from the local Address Book when E-mail Server Address Book is set to Off.

Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

Max E-mail Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.

Values:

2048 KB*	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, in increments of 1 KB.
50-16384 KB	

Timers

Purpose:

To configure timer settings.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for Copy, Scan, Fax, E-mail, or Print to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec [*]
lmin
2min
3min
4min

Fault Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is canceled if the timeout time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On*	60 seconds*	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops
	Available Range: 3-300 seconds	abnormally.

Output Settings

Purpose:

To configure settings concerning output from the printer.

Default Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm)*1	
Letter(8.5x11")	
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

inch series

A4 (210x297mm)
Letter(8.5x11")*1
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

Print ID

Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the user ID.		
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.		
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.		
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.		
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.		



NOTE: When printing on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

Print Text

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL (Page Description Language) data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Off	Does not print the received data.
On*	Prints the received data as text data.

Banner Sheet

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

Values:

Insert Position	Off*	Does not print the banner sheet.
	Front	Inserted before the first page of every copy.
	Back	Inserted after the last page of every copy.
	Front & Back	Inserted before the first page of every copy and after the last page of every copy.
Specify Tray	MPF	The banner sheet is loaded in the MPF.
	Tray l*	The banner sheet is loaded in tray1.
	Tray2*1	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

^{*1} This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Substitute Tray

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Off	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size*	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
Use MPF	Substitutes paper from the MPF.

Letterhead 2 Sided

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides when using letterhead.

Disable*	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.	
Enable	Prints on both sides of letterhead.	

A4<>Letter Switch

To print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 size paper is not available or to print Letter size jobs on A4 size paper if Letter size paper is not available.

Off*1	Does not print A4 size jobs on Letter size paper or Letter size jobs on A4 paper.
On*	Prints A4 size jobs on Letter size paper if A4 is not available in the paper trays and vice versa (Letter size job on A4 size paper).
*1 Depend	ling on the printer setting, the printer will continue to print on existing media of a different size or prompt the user to select from

the following:

Report 2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided [*]	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Prints reports on both side of a sheet of paper.

Use Another Tray

Purpose:

To change to another paper tray when a paper size runs out in the specified paper tray.



NOTE: If you select another paper tray with paper size smaller than the paper size specified in the job, the parts that do not fit are not printed (print size is not adjusted automatically).

Values:

Off	Does not print on other paper sizes in other paper trays if the paper size specified in the job runs out.
On*	Shows a message to select another tray when the specified paper runs out in the paper tray.

Set Available Time

Purpose:

Sets the available time for the Copy, Scan, Fax, and Print functions.

Values:

Copy, Scan, Fax, Print	Set Available Time	Off*	Does not set the time when function is available.
		On	Sets the time when function is available.
	Start Time		Sets the start time of the available time.
	End Time		Sets the end time of the available time.
	Recurrence		Sets the day of the week to repeat the setting.



NOTE: Set Available Time can be configured when Print, Copy, Scan, or Fax is set to On.

[•] Delete Job

[·] Supply with correct media

Secure Job Expiration



NOTE: Secure Job Expiration feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

Purpose:

To specify the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

Expiration Mode	Off*	Does not set the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
	On	Sets the date and time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
Expiration Time		Sets the time to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
Recurrence	Daily	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk daily.	
	Weekly*	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk weekly.	
	Monthly	Sets the recurrence to delete the files stored as Secure Print monthly.	
Weekly Setting	Monday	Sets the day of the week to delete the files stored as Secure Print.	
	Tuesday		
	Wednesday	_	
	Thursday		
	Friday	_	
	Saturday	_	
	Sunday*	_	
Monthly Setting	l Day [*]	Sets the day of the month to delete the files stored as Secure Print	
	Available Range: 1-28 days	in the RAM disk.	

ColorTrack Mode

Purpose:

To specify who has access to color printing.

Off*	Does not limit access to color printing.
On	Limits access to color printing. Authentication is done using user information registered on the printer.

Non Registered User

Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

Values:

Off*	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.	
On*1	Permits non-account user to print the data.	
*1 Set Non Account User Password using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool		

Auto Color To Mono Print



NOTE: Auto Color To Mono Print feature is available when Dell ColorTrack is disabled.

Purpose:

To specify whether to print all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

Values:

Off*	Prints according to the specified color mode.
On	Prints all print jobs in black and white even when color print is specified.

ColorTrack Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically print error-related information if printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.
On	Prints the error report when printing with ColorTrack results in an error.

Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

Plain	Light
	Normal*
Label	Light
	Normal*

Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing)

Values:

K Offset	0*	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
	Available Range: -5 to +5	
YMC Offset	0*	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease
	Available Range: -5 to +5	the value.

Adjust 2nd BTR



NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

Plain	0*	Sets the transfer roller voltage in increments of 1. The default settings	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on	
Plain Thick	0*	 the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage. 	
	Available Range: -5 to +10		
Covers	0^*	_	
$(106-163g/m^2)$	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Covers Thick	0*	_	
$(164-216g/m^2)$	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Coated	0*	_	
$(106-163g/m^2)$	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Coated Thick	0*	_	
$(164-216g/m^2)$	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Label	0*	_	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Envelope	0*	_	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	
Recycled	0^*	_	
	Available Range: -5 to +10	_	

Adjust Fusing Unit



NOTE: The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

To adjust the temperature setting of the fusing unit for each paper type.

Values:

Plain	0*
	Available Range: -3 to +3
Plain Thick	0*
	Available Range: -3 to +3
Covers	0*
$(106-163g/m^2)$	Available Range: -3 to +3
Covers Thick	0*
$(164-216g/m^2)$	Available Range: -3 to +3
Coated	0*
$(106-163g/m^2)$	Available Range: -3 to +3
Coated Thick	0*
$(164-216g/m^2)$	Available Range: -3 to +3
Label	0*
	Available Range: -3 to +3
Envelope	0*
	Available Range: -3 to +3
Recycled	0*
	Available Range: -3 to +3

Sets the fusing unit temperature in increments of 1. The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

Auto Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

Color Reg Adjust

Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.

Manual Color Registration Adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is



NOTE: The Color Reg Adjust feature can be configured when Auto Reg Adjust is set to Off.

Values:

Auto (Correct
--------	---------

Start

Automatically performs color registration correction.

Color Regi Chart	Print		Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under lateral adjustment and process adjustment in Enter Number.
Enter Number	LY	Available Range:	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Select OK to save all the settings.
	LM	-9 to +9	
	LC		
	RY	Available Range:	
	RM	-9 to +9	
	RC		
	PY	Available Range:	
	PM	-9 to +9	
	PC		



NOTE: Ensure that you remove the paper from the single sheet feeder before performing Auto Correct.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all the menu parameters are reset to their default values.

Values:

User Fax Section	Initialize Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Initialize Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
User Account Section	Initialize Initializes the user registration information.
System Section	Initialize Initializes the system parameters.

Initialize Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

Reset Fusing Unit

To initialize the life counter of the fusing unit. After replacing the fusing unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

Reset Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the transfer belt unit. After replacing the transfer belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

Clear Storage



NOTE: Clear Storage feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

To clear all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail box Print, Proof Print, and Stored Print in the RAM disk.

Values:

All	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print in the RAM disk.	
Secure Document	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print in the RAM disk.	
Stored Document	Clear	Deletes all files stored as Stored Print in the RAM disk.	

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.



CAUTION: Using a non-Dell™ toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Dell toner cartridges.

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.



NOTE: An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner, etc.

Values:

0m*	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	_
2000m	_
3000m	_

Clear Job History

Purpose:

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

Fax Line Test



NOTE: Fax Line Test feature is not available when the Fax function is disabled.

Purpose:

To test if the voltage supply from the fax line is sufficient.

Secure Settings

Use the Secure Settings menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

See also:

"Panel Lock"

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to Admin Settings with a password, and to set or change the password.

Panel Lock Control	Disable [*]	Disables password protection for Admin Settings.
	Enable	Enables password protection for Admin Settings.
Change Password*1	0000–9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Settings.

^{*1} This item is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

Function Enabled



NOTE: Function Enabled feature is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable or disable each of the printer functions, or to require a password to use the functions. Values:

Сору	On [*]	Enables the Copy function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Copy function, but requires a password to use the function.
	On (Color Password)	Enables the Copy function with a color mode, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the Copy function.
E-mail	On*	Enables the E-mail function.
	On (Password)	Enables the E-mail function, but requires a password.
	Off	Disables the E-mail function.
Fax	On*	Enables the Fax function.
	On (Password)	Enables the Fax function but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
	Off	Disables the Fax function (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Fax Driver	Enable [*]	Enables the Fax Driver function.
	Disable	Disables the Fax Driver function (the printer will not send faxes).

Scan To Network	On*		Enables the Scan To Network function.	
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Network function, but requires a password.	
	Off		Disables the Scan To Network function.	
Scan To Application	On [*]		Enables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.	
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To Application function, but requires a password. WSD Scan is disabled since On (Password) is not supported by WSD Scan.	
	Off		Disables the Scan To Application and WSD Scan function.	
PC Scan	On*		Enables the PC Scan function.	
	On (Password)		Enables the PC Scan function, but requires a password.	
	Off		Disables the PC Scan function.	
Scan To USB	On [*]		Enables the Scan To USB function.	
	On (Password)		Enables the Scan To USB function, but requires a password.	
	Off		Disables the Scan To USB function.	
USB Direct Print	On [*]		Enables the USB Direct Print function.	
	On (Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function, but requires a password.	
	On (Color Password)		Enables the USB Direct Print function with a color mode, but requires a password.	
	Off		Disables the USB Direct Print function.	
ID Card Copy	Enable [*]		Enables the ID Card Copy function.	
	Disable		Disables the ID Card Copy function.	
USB Services	Show When Inserted	Enable [*]	Shows a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.	
		Disable	Does not show a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB memory is inserted in to the printer.	
Change Password*1			Changes the password that is set under the Function Enabled menu.	

^{*1} This item is available only when On (Password) or On (Color Password) is enabled.

Edit E-mail From Fields

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable [*]	Enables editing of the transmission source.

Reconfirm Recipient

Purpose:

To specify whether to reconfirm the recipient before sending a fax or scan.



NOTE: If the Reconfirm Recipient menu is set to Reconfirm Recipient, recipients can only be selected from the phone book or the address book. You cannot directly enter an address or fax number.

Values:

No Confirmation*	Does not display a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.
Reconfirm Recipient	Displays a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent.

Domain Filtering

Purpose:

To specify whether to only send e-mails to specified domains.



NOTE: Set the domains from **SMTP Domain Filtering** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Values:

Off*	Disables Domain Filtering.
Allow Domains	Only allows e-mails to be sent to specified domains.

Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables firmware updates.
Enable [*]	Enables firmware updates.

Display of Network Information

To show or hide network information in the message field of the **Home** screen.

Show IPv4 Address*	Shows the IPv4 address of the printer on the Home screen.
Show Host Name	Shows the host name of the printer on the Home screen.
Hide Network Information	Does not show network information on the Home screen.

Login Error



NOTE: Login Error feature is available only when Panel Lock Control is set to Enable.

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the Admin Settings and Report/List menu.

Values:

Off*		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	5*	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	Available Range: 1-10	_

NFC Authentication

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

Values:

Disable	Does not permit the authentication using the NFC authentication card.
Enable [*]	Permits the authentication using the NFC authentication card.

USB Settings

Use the USB Settings menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

USB Port



NOTE: USB Port feature is available only for the USB port on the rear of the printer.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

PS Data Format

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface. You can configure the PS Data Format settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Auto	Used when auto-detecting the PostScript communication protocol.
Standard	Used when the communication protocol is in ASCII interface.
ВСР	Used when the communication protocol is in binary format.
TBCP*	Used when the communication protocol supports both ASCII and binary data to switch between them according to the specified control code.
Binary	Used when no special processing is required for data.

Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is canceled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30 seconds*	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Available Range: 5-300 seconds	-

Default Settings

Use Default Settings to modify the Copy, Scan, or Fax menu defaults.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the Copy menu defaults.

Copy Defaults allows you to configure the following items in addition to the items under the Copy menu.

Auto Exposure Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.

Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Yellow	Low Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_
	High Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_

Magenta	Low Density 0*		Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3		
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
	High Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
Cyan	Low Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
	High Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
Black	Low Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of low density black.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
	Med. Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	
	High Density	0*	Sets the color balance level of high density black.	
		Available Range: -3 to +3	_	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the Fax menu defaults. See "Fax" for more details.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the Scan menu defaults.

 ${\tt Scan\ Defaults\ allows\ you\ to\ configure\ the\ following\ items\ in\ addition\ to\ the\ items\ under\ the\ Scan\ menu.}$

Auto Exposure Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to Normal.	
High	Sets the background suppression level to High.	
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to Highest.	

TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6*	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2	Sets the default TIFF file format to TTN2.

Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.	
Normal*	Sets the image compression level to Normal.	
Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.	

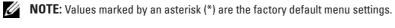
USB Direct Print Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the defaults for the USB Direct Print Defaults menu. See "Print PDF/TIFF" for more details.

Tray Management

Use the Tray Settings menu to define the print media loaded in trayl and the optional 550-sheet feeder.



Tray Settings To configure tray settings.

MPF

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

Display Tray Prompt		Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the MPF. The factory default is on (check).
Use Driver Settings for Print Job		Enter a check to use the paper size and type set on the printer driver. The factory default is off (blank).
Size	A4	
	$(210x297mm)^{*1}$	
mm series	A5	
	(148x210mm)	
	B5	
	(182x257mm)	

	Letter
	(8.5x11")
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
	Executive
	(7.3x10.5")
	Envelope #10
	(4.1x9.5")
	Monarch Env.
	(3.9x7.5")
	DL Env.
	(110x220mm)
	C5 Env.
	(162x229mm)
	Custom
inch series	Letter
	$(8.5x11")^{*1}$
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
	A4
	(210x297mm)
	A5
	(148x210mm)
	B5
	(182x257mm)
	Executive
	(7.3x10.5")
	Envelope #10
	(4.1x9.5")
	Monarch Env.
	(3.9x7.5")
	DL Env.
	(110x220mm)
	C5 Env.
	(162x229mm)
	Custom
T	Plain*
Туре	
	Plain Thick

Covers
$(106-163g/m^2)$
Covers Thick
(164-216g/m ²)
Coated
$(106-163g/m^2)$
Coated Thick
(164-216g/m ²)
Label
Envelope
Recycled
Letterhead
Preprinted
Prepunched
Color
Plain S2
Color S2
Plain Thick S2
Recycled S2
·

^{*1} Denotes country-specific factory default value.

Tray1

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in trayl.

Display Tray Pron	npt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in tray1. The factory default is on (check).
Size	A4	
	(210x297mm)*1	
mm series	A5	
	(148x210mm)	
	B5	
	(182x257mm)	
	Letter	
	(8.5x11")	
	Folio	
	(8.5x13")	
	Legal	
	(8.5x14")	

	Executive	
	$(7.3 \times 10.5")$	
	Custom	
inch series	Letter	
fileli series	$(8.5x11")^{*1}$	
	Folio	
	(8.5x13")	
	Legal	
	(8.5x14")	
	A4	
	(210x297mm)	
	A5	
	(148x210mm)	
	B5	
	(182x257mm)	
	Executive	
	(7.3x10.5")	
	Custom	
Туре	Plain	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	$(106-163g/m^2)$	
	Covers Thick	
	$(164-216g/m^2)$	
	Coated	
	$(106-163g/m^2)$	
	Coated Thick	
	$(164-216g/m^2)$	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain S2	
	Color S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Recycled S2	

^{*1} Denotes country-specific factory default value.

NOTE: For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Tray2



NOTE: Tray2 feature is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder.

Display Tray Prompt		Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Paper Type and Paper Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550-sheet feeder. The factory default is on (check).
Size	Auto Sensed*	
	Custom	
Туре	Plain	
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	$(106-163g/m^2)$	
	Covers Thick	
	$(164-216g/m^2)$	
	Coated	
	$(106-163g/m^2)$	
	Coated Thick	
	$(164-216g/m^2)$	
	Recycled	
	Letterhead	
	Preprinted	
	Prepunched	
	Color	
	Plain S2	
	Color S2	
	Plain Thick S2	
	Recycled S2	

Tray Priority

Purpose:

To set the priority order of the paper trays for automatic tray selection. If paper trays loaded with the same paper size and type exists, the paper tray is selected according to this priority order.

First	MPF^{*1}	Sets the MPF as the first priority.
	Tray1*	Sets tray 1 as the first priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the first priority.
Second	MPF^*	Sets the MPF as the second priority.
	Tray1*1	Sets tray1 as the second priority.

	Tray2	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the second priority.
Third	MPF	Sets the MPF as the third priority.
	Trayl	Sets tray 1 as the third priority.
	Tray2*1	Sets the optional 550-sheet feeder as the third priority.
¥4		

^{*1} The factory default when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Language Settings

Use the Language Settings menu to configure Panel Language, or Keyboard Layout.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the touch panel.

Values:

English*
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk
Svenska

Keyboard Layout

Purpose:

To select the keyboard layout on the touch panel.

Values:

QWERTY	
AZERTY	
QWERTZ	

Print

Use the Print menus to print a job using the Secure Print, Private Mail Box Print, Public Mail Box Print, and Proof Print features.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Private Mailbox



NOTE: Private Mailbox feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Private Mailbox.

Values:

Select User ID			Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
		Available Range: 1-999	_
		Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete*	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Public Mailbox



NOTE: Public Mailbox feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Public Mailbox.

Values:

Select User ID	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
		Available Range: 1-999	_
		Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Proof Print



NOTE: Proof Print feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

Purpose:

To specify whether and how to print the job stored in the Proof Print. When the print job is sent from the printer driver on the computer, a single copy is printed for you to check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents a large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.

Select User ID	Select a Job	Selects a job to print.
	Select All	Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.

Quantity	1*	Specifies the quantity of prints in increments of 1.
	Available Range: 1-999	_
	Use Driver Settings	Sets the quantity of prints specified on the printer driver.
Print		Prints the selected job.
	Print and Delete	Deletes the document after it is printed.
Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Secure Print



NOTE: Secure Print feature is available only when RAM Disk is set to On.

Purpose:

To print confidential jobs. The printer can hold the job in memory until you arrive at the printer and type the password on the operator panel.

Values:

Select User ID			Enter the password you specified on the printer driver.
	Select a Job		Selects a job to print.
	Select All		Selects all the documents stored for this User ID.
	Print		Prints the selected job.
		Print and Delete*	Deletes the document after it is printed.
	Delete		Deletes the specified document from print memory.

Secure Fax Receive

Purpose:

To specify the password to receive faxes.

Values:

Enter Password	Enter the password you specified in Secure Receive.

Tile Settings

Use the tile settings to create and edit custom tile for the Print menus.

Copy

Use the Copy menus to configure a variety of copy features.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
Darken 2		
Darken l		
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
Lighten l	Works well with dark documents.	
Lighten 2		
Lighten 3		

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Full Color [*]	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.

Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF. When Use Driver Settings for Print Job is set in MPF of Tray Settings, Any is displayed for Size and Type. If you start the copy job with Any as the paper size and type, A4 or Letter is selected as the paper size and plain is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select MPF and specify the paper size and type.
	Paper Size	A4
	mm series	$(210x297mm)^{*1}$
		A5
		(148x210mm)
		B5
		(182x257mm)
		Letter
		(8.5x11")
		Folio
		(8.5x13")
		Legal
		(8.5x14")

	Executive
	(7.3x10.5")
	Envelope #10
	(4.1x9.5")
	Monarch Env.
	(3.9x7.5")
	DL Env.
	(110x220mm)
	C5 Env.
	(162x229mm)
	Custom
inch series	Letter
	$(8.5x11")^{*1}$
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
	A4
	(210x297mm)
	A5
	(148x210mm)
	B5
	(182x257mm)
	Executive
	(7.3x10.5")
	Envelope #10
	(4.1x9.5")
	Monarch Env.
	(3.9x7.5")
	DL Env.
	(110x220mm)
	C5 Env.
	(162x229mm)
	Custom
Paper Type	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers
	$(106-163 \text{g/m}^2)$
	Covers Thick
	$(164-216g/m^2)$
	Coated
	$(106-163g/m^2)$

	Coated Thick
	$(164-216g/m^2)$
	Label
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
Tray l*	The paper is fed from tray l.
Tray2*2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
*1	

^{*1} Denotes country-specific factory default value.

2 Sided Copying

Purpose:

To specify whether to make duplex copy and select the binding position.

Values:

$1 \rightarrow 1 \text{ Sided}^*$		Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
$1 \rightarrow 2$ Sided		Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
$2 \rightarrow 1$ Sided Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of pa		Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.
$2 \rightarrow 2$ Sided	\rightarrow 2 Sided Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.	
	Long Edge Binding*	Scans both sides of a document bound by long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by short edge.

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.	
Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.	

^{*2} This item is available only when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image.

Values:

Custom ratio	100*	Enter a custom ratio in increments of 1 percent.
	25-400 %	
mm series	100%*	
	50%	
	70%	
	A4→A5	
	81%	
	B5→A5	
	122%	
	A5→B5	
	141%	
	A5→A4	
	200%	
inch series	100%*	
	50%	
	64%	
	Ledger→Letter	
	78%	
	Legal→Letter	
	129%	
	Statement→Letter	
	154%	
	Statement→Legal	
	200%	

Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

Auto*1		
A4 (210x297mm)		
A5 (148x210mm)		
B5 (182x257mm)		
Letter (8.5x11")		

Folio (8.5x13")

Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")
inch series
Auto*1
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.



NOTE: When Auto is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in tray1 or the MPF.

Original Type

Purpose:

To improve the image quality by selecting the type of the original document.

Values:

Photo & Text*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Text	Used for documents with text.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

Collation

Purpose:

To sort the copy job. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete set of three page documents is printed one by one.

Auto*	Automatically sorts a copy job only when you use the DADF.
Collated	Sorts a copy job.
Uncollated	Does not sort a copy job.

2-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform 2-up printing.	
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.	
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.	

Color Saturation

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

High	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.	
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.	
Low	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.	

Margin

Purpose:

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the copy.

Values:

Top/Bottom	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	_
Left/Right	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	
Middle	0.0 inches*(0 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	_

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of copy features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for copying.

ID Copy

Use the ID Copy menus to configure a variety of ID Copy features.

Values:

Quantity	For details about each menu, see "Copy."
Darken / Lighten	
Output Color	
Select Tray	
Sharpness	
Color Saturation	
Auto Exposure	

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of ID Copy features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for ID Copy.

Scan

Scan to E-mail

To use the e-mail to configure a variety of e-mail features. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan options you can set for the scan.

Values:

Enter Recipient's Address		Enters the e-mail address of the recipient using the keyboard.
Address Book	Individuals	Selects an e-mail address from the local address book.
	Groups	Selects an e-mail group from the local address book.
	Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address from the server address book.
Sender	Keyboard	Enters the e-mail address of the sender using the keyboard.
	Address Book	Selects an e-mail address of the sender from the local address book.
	Network Address Book	Searches an e-mail address of the sender from the server address book.

Scan to Network

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or a computer. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Address Book	Selects a FTP address or Server Message Block (SMB) protocol address from the local address
	book.

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To save scanned data on a computer. The Scan to PC feature allows you to import scanned data from the printer to a computer connected via a USB cable. The computer must have ScanButton Manager installed to receive the data. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Scan to USB

Purpose:

To save the scanned image to a USB memory attached to the printer. See "Scan Settings" for more details about the various scan settings you can set for the scan.

Values:

Folder Name	Selects which folder the scanned image is saved to.

Scan Settings

Use the scan settings to configure a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Scan to Network, Scan to PC, or Scan to USB.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white scanning.

Values:

Color*	Scans in color mode. Works well with texts and photos.
Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. Works well with texts.
Gray Scale	Scans in grayscale mode. Works well with texts and photos.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution of the scanned image.

200 dpi*		
300 dpi		
400 dpi		
600 dpi		

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*	
Multi-Page TIFF	
TIFF (1 File per Page)	
JPEG (1 File per Page)	

2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

Values:

1 Sided [*]		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding [*]	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the scanned image darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
Darken 2		
Darken l		
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
Lighten l	Works well with dark documents.	
Lighten 2		
Lighten 3		

Contrast

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.

High	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
Medium*	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
Low	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.

Sharpness

Purpose:

To adjust the sharpness to make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.	
Soften	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background to enhance text.

Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm) *1
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.

inch series

Letter (8.5x11") *1	
Folio (8.5x13")	
Legal (8.5x14")	
A4 (210x297mm)	
A5 (148x210mm)	
B5 (182x257mm)	
Executive (7.3x10.5")	
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default values.	

Margin

Purpose:

To specify the top, bottom, right, left, and middle margins of the scanned image.

Values:

Top/Bottom	0.1 inch* (2 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0-2.0 inches (0-50 mm)	
Left/Right	0.1 inch* (2 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0-2.0 inches (0-50 mm)	
Middle	0.0 inches*(0 mm*)	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	

File Naming Mode

Purpose:

To specify the detailed setting of File Naming Mode.

Values:

Auto*		Sets the default file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Scan to E-mail, Scan to USB, Scan to Network, or Scan to PC. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for scanning.

Scan to WSD

Purpose:

To save scanned data on a computer using WSD.



NOTE: Scan to WSD is available when the OS of the client computer is Windows Vista SP2 (or later), Windows 7, and Windows 8.

Computer Name		Selects which computer the scanned image is saved to. Up to 20 computers will be listed.
	Scan	Sends the scanned image to the computer according to the chosen event. Which
	ScanToPrint	application each event is associated with depends on the setting on the computer.
	ScanToEmail	
	ScanToFax	
	ScanToOCR	

Tile Settings

Use the tile settings to create and edit custom tiles for Scan to WSD.

Fax

Use the Fax menus to configure a variety of fax features.



NOTE: The Fax function cannot be used unless you set up a country code under Country. If Country is not set up, a message Set the Country Code appears on the display.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Enter Number		Enters the fax number using the keyboard.
Speed Dial		Enters the speed dial number stored in the printer.
Phone Book	Individuals	Selects a fax number from the local address book.
	Groups	Selects a group dial number from the local address book.
	Network Phone Book	Searches a fax number from the server address book.
On Hook	Send [*]	Sends faxes manually.
	Receive	Receives faxes manually.
	Polling	Manually retrieves information from a remote machine.

Fax Settings

Use the fax settings to configure a variety of fax features.

Darken / Lighten

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
Darken 2		
Darken l		
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.	
Lighten l	Works well with dark documents.	
Lighten 2		
Lighten 3		

2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan both sides of a document.

1 Sided*		Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding [*]	Scans both sides of a document bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document bound by the short edge.

Polling Receive

Purpose:

To receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive faxes using Polling Receive.
On	Receives faxes using Polling Receive.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the scan resolution to improve the output quality.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.	
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.	
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine mode. See the notes below.	
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.	



NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Delayed Send

Purpose:

To send a fax at a later time.

Values:

Off*	Does not send a fax at a later time.
On	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.



NOTE: A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of fax features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for faxing.



NOTE: Up to 30 addresses can be stored on the printer. If you have the addresses of more than 31, you cannot save settings of fax features. In that case, please reduce to 30.

Print PDF/TIFF

NOTE: Print PDF/TIFF function is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the front USB port.

Purpose:

To specify the document stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory. See "Print Settings" for more details about the various print settings you can set for the print.

Print JPEG



NOTE: Print JPEG function is available only when a USB memory is inserted in the front USB port.

Purpose:

To specify the photos stored in the root, file, or folder in a USB memory. See "Print Settings" for more details about the various print settings you can set for the print.

Print Settings

Use the print settings to configure a variety of print features.

Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white printing.

Full Color [*]	Prints in color mode.
Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Select Tray	
Purpose:	
To specify the input tr	ıy.

Values:		
MPF		The paper is fed from the MPF. When Use Driver Settings for Print Job is set in MPF of Tray Settings, Any is displayed for Size and Type. If you start the print job with Any as the paper size and type, A4 or Letter is selected as the paper size and plain is selected as the paper type. If you want to specify the size and type of paper in the MPF, select MPF and specify the paper size and type.
	Size	A4
	mm series	$(210x297mm)^{*1}$
		A5
		(148x210mm)

	B5
	(182x257mm)
	Letter
	(8.5x11")
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
inch series	Letter
	$(8.5x11")^{*1}$
	Folio
	(8.5x13")
	Legal
	(8.5x14")
	A4
	(210x297mm)
	A5
	(148x210mm)
	B5
	(182x257mm)
Туре	Plain
	Plain Thick
	Covers
	$(106-163g/m^2)$
	Covers Thick
	$(164-216g/m^2)$
	Coated
	$(106-163g/m^2)$
	Coated Thick
	$(164-216g/m^2)$
	Envelope
	Recycled
	Letterhead
	Prepunched
	Color
	Plain S2
	Color S2
	Plain Thick S2
	Recycled S2
	The pener is fed from travil

Tray1*

The paper is fed from tray1.

Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.
*1 Denotes country-specific factory default value.	

2 Sided Printing

Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided [*]		Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Long Edge Binding [*]	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the long edge.
	Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by the short edge.

Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

1-Up*	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2-Up	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4-Up	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
Off(No Scaling)	Prints without scaling.

Image Types

Purpose:

To set the print image quality.

Values:

Auto*	Prints PDF/TIFF files in the Text mode and JPEG files in the Photos (Standard Quality) mode.
Photos (Standard Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the standard quality.
Photos (High Quality)	Prints the photographic images at the high quality.
Text	Prints the text document at the standard quality.

Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Collated	Sorts a job.
Uncollated*	Does not sort a job.

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

Save Settings

Use the save settings to save a variety of USB Direct Print features. And also use to create and edit custom tiles for USB Direct Print.

Dell Document Hub

Use the Dell Document Hub menus to configure a variety of Dell Document Hub features.

Search for Files

Purpose:

To search the files saved in the cloud services, and print them from the printer.

Values:

Text Box	Enters the keywords, such as the words including the file name.
AZ♥	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.
Ø	Sets the settings of the Print Settings.
₹0	Displays the selected files. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

Browse for Files

Purpose:

To browse and print the files saved in the selected cloud services.

Text Box	Enters the keywords, such as the words including the file name.	
Q	Searches for the files in the current location or the selected cloud services.	
Q	Sets the settings of the Print Settings.	
3 0	Displays the selected files. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.	
A Z.♥	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.	
	Saves the settings of the Print Settings as Favorite.	

Scan

Purpose:

To scan the document and save the scanned file in the cloud service.

Values:

File Name	Enters the file name you want to use.	
File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.	
Tag	Enters the tag you want to use.	
Q	Searches for the location to save the scanned file. You can search for the location across the cloud services.	
Q	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.	
AZ↓	Sorts the searching results by selecting the sorting order.	
	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.	

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enters the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

File Name Option

Purpose:

To specify the way to name the scanned document.

Values:

Off		Adds no text in front of the file name or after the file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

Smart OCR Scan

Purpose:

To scan the document using OCR and save it in the cloud service.

Values:

File Name	Enters the file name you want to use.	
File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.	
Tag	Enters the tag you want to use.	
Q	Searches for the location to save the scanned file. You can search for the location across the cloud services.	
Q	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.	
	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.	

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

DF(Searchable)	
XT	
F	
OC C	
OCX	
.S	
LSX	
TX	
ΓML	

OCR Language

Purpose:

To specify the language for the OCR.

Values:

Auto
Auto English Français Italiano Deutsch Español Dansk Nederlands
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Dansk
Nederlands
Norsk Svenska
Svenska

PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the PDF file).

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enters the document open password to print the secure PDF job.	

Remove Blank Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to remove the blank pages.

Values:

Off	Disables the Remove Blank Page feature.
On	Enables the Remove Blank Page feature.

File Name Option

Purpose:

To specify the way to name the scanned document.

Values:

Off		Adds no text in front of the file name or after the file name.
Add Prefix		Adds texts in front of the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Prefix is selected.
Add Suffix		Adds texts after the file name.
	Prefix/Suffix String	Specifies the texts that are added when Add Suffix is selected.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

E-mail Me

Purpose:

To scan the document and send to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

Values:

File Format	Selects the file format from the list to save the scanned image.
Subject	Enters the subject you want to use.
Ø	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

To specify the file format	to save the scanned image.
Values:	
PDF	
PDF(Searchable)	
TXT	
RTF	
DOC	
DOCX	
XLS	
XLSX	
PPTX	
HTML	
Multi-Page TIFF	
TIFF	
JPEG	
OCR Language	
Purpose:	
To specify the language for	or the OCR.
Values:	
Auto	
English	
Français	
Italiano	
Deutsch	
Español	
Dansk	
Nederlands	
Norsk	
Svenska	
PDF Password	
Purpose:	
To enter the password whe PDF file).	en you print a PDF file secured with a document open password (password to open the
Values:	
Enter PDF Password	Enter the document open password to print the secure PDF job.

File Format Purpose:

Remove Blank Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to remove the blank pages.

Values:

Off	Disables the Remove Blank Page feature.
On	Enables the Remove Blank Page feature.

For more information on other settings, see "Scan Settings".

Business Card Reader

Purpose:

To scan the business card and send to you as an attached file (vCard format) of an e-mail.

Values:

Subject	Enters the subject you want to use.
Q	Sets the settings of the Scan Settings.
	Saves the settings of the Scan Settings as Favorite.

Add Apps

Use the Add Apps menus to add a variety of tiles on the Home screen.

Panel Lock

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. For regular printing, items can be selected from the menu and printer settings remain unchanged. For regular printing, items can be configured using the printer driver.



NOTE: Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the Stored Print and Tray Settings menus.

Enabling the Panel Lock

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- **3** Tap **▼** until Secure Settings appears, and then tap Secure Settings.
- 4 Tap Panel Lock.
- 5 Tap Panel Lock Control.
- 6 Tap Enable, and then tap OK.
- 7 Enter the new password, and then tap OK.

↑ CAUTION: Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.

Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the (i) (Information) button, turn on the printer. Perform steps 7 and 8.

8 Re-enter the password to confirm the password that you entered, and then tap OK.

The password has been changed.

To change the password while Panel Lock is Enable, perform steps 1 to 4 above, and then tap Change Password. Perform steps 7 and 8 above to change the password.

Disabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- **3** Tap **▼** until Secure Settings appears, and then tap Secure Settings.
- 4 Tap Panel Lock.
- 5 Tap Panel Lock Control.
- 6 Tap Disable.
- 7 Enter the current password, and then tap OK.

The setting has been changed.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the phone book, address book, or menu parameters are reset to their default values.

The following menu parameters are exceptions and are not reset.

- Network settings
- Panel Lock settings and password
- Function Enabled settings (Copy, Scan to E-mail, Fax, Scan to Network, Scan to PC, PC Scan, Scan to USB, USB Direct Print) and passwords
- Secure Receive settings and password
- Login Error settings
- Set Available Time settings
- Secure Job Expiration settings
- USB Port settings
- ColorTrack Mode settings
- ColorTrack Error Report settings
- Non Registered User settings

When Using the Operator Panel

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Maintenance.
- **4** Tap ▼ until Reset Defaults appears, and then tap Reset Defaults.

5 Tap the desired setting, and then tap Initialize.

User Fax Section	Resets the phone book data.
User Scan Section	Resets the address book data.
User Account Section	Resets the user registration information.
System Section	Resets the system parameters.

6 Tap Yes, Start.

The printer is restarted automatically.

Print Media Guidelines

Print media refers to paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting and caring for print media.



NOTE: Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m² (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m² (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in Trayl and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder" and "Loading Print Media in the MPF" for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The tray automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m² to 216 g/m² (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. The multipurpose feeder (MPF) automatically feeds paper weights from 60 g/m² to 216 g/m² (16 lb to 80 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m² (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m² (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped, even in the paper tray, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the MPF.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects the print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse on to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both the print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 g/m² to 135 g/m² (16 lb to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m² (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 % chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton may lead to degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use 75 g/m² (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provides acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.

It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.
 - In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, and thermal paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25 % post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.

Selecting Paper

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Flex the paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.





Selecting Pre-Printed Media and Letterheads

When selecting pre-printed and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterheads printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but does not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225 °C (437 °F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner or the silicone in the fusing unit. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

When selecting pre-punched paper for the printer:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.
- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Envelopes

Depending on the envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of wrinkling. It is recommended that you try a sample first before buying large quantities of any print media. See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to the MPF. Set the paper type to Envelope, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- Use envelopes made from 75 g/m² (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m² (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25 % or less. Envelopes with 100 % cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m² (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.

- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load an envelope into the MPF, insert the envelope with the flaps closed or open and the short-edge of the envelope facing into the printer. The print side must be facing up.
- See "Loading an Envelope in the MPF" for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60 %) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
 - Have excessive curl or twist
 - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
 - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing
 - Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
 - Have an interlocking design
 - Have postage stamps attached
 - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position
 - Have nicked edges or bent corners
 - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).
- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205 °C (401 °F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Set the paper type to Label from the printer driver.
- Load labels in the MPF. Trayl and the optional 550-sheet feeder do not support labels.
- Do not load labels together with paper in the MPF.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.

Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

WARNING: Otherwise a jam occurs in the printer and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21 °C (70 °F) and the relative humidity is 40 %.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media and Specifications

The following tables show print media information.

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper size	MPF	Tray1	Optional 550-sheet feeder	Duplex unit
A4 (210 x 297 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5 (182 x 257 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 (148 x 210 mm)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter (8.5 x 11 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Folio (8.5 x 13 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal (8.5 x 14 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope #10 (4.125 x 9.5 in)	Y	N	N	N
Monarch (3.875 x 7.5 in)	Y	N	N	N
DL (110 x 220mm)	Y	N	N	N
C5 (162 x 229mm)	Y	N	N	N
Custom*1,2	Y	Y	Y	Y

^{*1} Custom: width: 76.2 mm (3.0 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for the MPF; 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder length: 127.0 mm (5.0 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for the MPF; 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches) for tray1 and the optional 550-sheet feeder

^{*2} XPS driver does not support custom size paper.

Supported Paper Types

Paper type		MPF		Tray1		Optional 550-sheet feeder		Duplex unit	
		Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2	Side 1	Side 2
Plain	Light	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Normal	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
	Thick	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Covers	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Coated	Normal	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
	Thick	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Label	Normal	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Light	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope		Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Recycled		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Letterhead		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Preprinted		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Prepunched		Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N
Color		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N



NOTE: For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting the Paper Density (Light or Normal) under Maintenance from the operator panel, **Tool Box**, or **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. Once you set the Paper Density settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.



NOTE: Coated paper can only be fed one by one.

Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (g/m²)	Remarks		
Plain	60–90	-		
Plain Thick	80/90–105	-		
Recycled	60–105	-		
Labels	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.		
Covers	106–163	-		
Covers Thick	164–216	-		
Envelope	-	-		
Coated	106–163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.		
Coated Thick	164–216	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.		
Letterhead	60–90	-		
Preprinted	60–90	-		
Prepunched	60–90	-		
Color	60–90	-		

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

Capacity

Trayl can hold:

• 250 sheets of the standard paper.

The optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) can hold:

• 550 sheets of the standard paper.

The multipurpose feeder (MPF) can hold:

150 sheets of the standard paper.

Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that trayl and the optional 550-sheet feeder can handle are:

- Width 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

The maximum dimensions of print media that the MPF can handle are:

- Width 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length 127 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

Loading Print Media in Tray1 and the Optional 550-Sheet Feeder

This section describes how to load letterhead. For details about loading print media other than letterhead, see "Loading Paper."

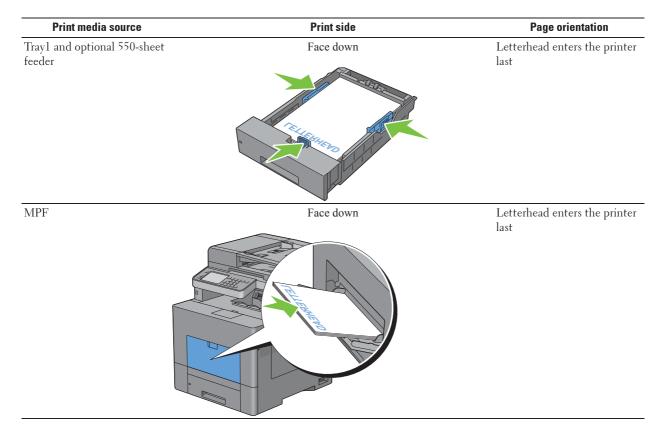
NOTE: To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.

NOTE: Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in the printer.

Loading Letterhead (Pre-Printed and Pre-Punched Paper)

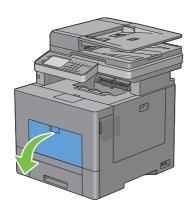
The pre-printed paper such as letterhead and pre-punched paper must be inserted bottom edge first with the print side facing down as shown below.

NOTE: Set Letterhead 2-Sided or Letterhead Duplex Mode to Enable and Paper Type to Letterhead, Preprinted, or Prepunched from the operator panel or the printer driver even when you print on a single side of letterhead, pre-printed, or pre-punched paper.

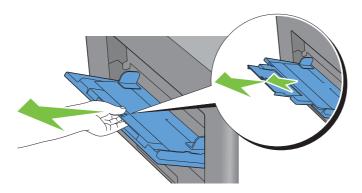


Loading Print Media in the MPF

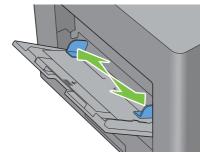
1 Gently pull open the MPF cover.



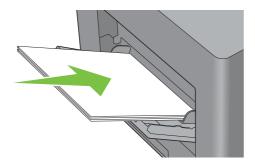
2 Extend the extension tray as necessary.



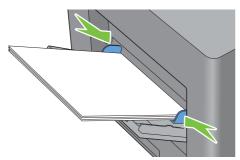
3 Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. The width guides should be fully extended.



- 4 Insert all media facing up and top edge first into the MPF.
 - **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.



- **5** Slide both width guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.
 - **NOTE:** Do not force the print media into the MPF.



- 6 On the touch panel, tap Size.
- 7 Tap or until the desired paper size appears, and then select the size.
- Тар Туре.
- **9** Tap $\overline{\ \ }$ or $\ \ \$ until the desired paper type appears, and then select the type.
- **10** Tap OK.

Loading an Envelope in the MPF

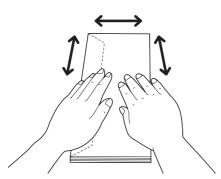
Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the MPF:



CAUTION: Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.



NOTE: If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, press firmly across the whole envelopes to flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the MPF.

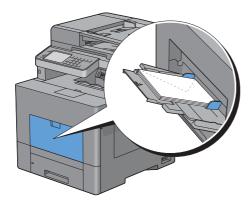




NOTE: The maximum height (quantity) of envelopes that can be loaded in the MPF is approximately 15 mm (0.59 inches) (15 envelopes).

Envelope #10, Monarch, or DL

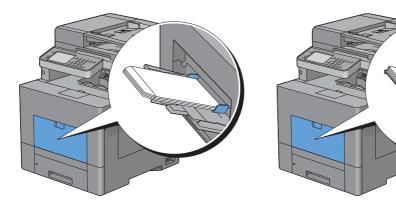
Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the left when you face towards the printer.



C5

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps open or closed and the print side up.

Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom with the flaps open or at the top with the flaps closed when you face towards the printer.



Using the MPF

- Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.
- To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Guidelines."
- Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the MPF or when the printer is printing from the MPF. This may result in a paper jam.
- Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side up and the top of the print media going into the MPF first.
- Do not place objects on the MPF. Also, avoid pressing down or apply excessive force on it.
- The icons on the MPF show how to load the MPF with paper, and how to turn an envelope for printing.

Linking Trays

The printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.



NOTE: The print media should be the same size and type in each tray. The MPF cannot be linked to any of the tray sources.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the Paper Type setting in the Tray Settings component for each source (tray).

To disable tray linking change the paper type in one of the sources (trays) to a unique value.



NOTE: If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the printer driver properties/preferences.

Printing, Copying, Scanning, Faxing, and Dell Document Hub

19 Printing	307
20 Copying	327
21 Scanning	339
22 Faxing	369
23 Dell™ Document Hub	395

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media."

Avoiding Paper Jams



CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Paper"
- "Loading Print Media in the MPF"
- "Avoiding Jams"

If you encounter a paper jam, see "Clearing Jams."

Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the printer driver. When you choose Print from an application, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or

You may need to click Preferences from the initial Print box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more

To print a job from a typical Microsoft[®] Windows[®] application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- **2** From the File menu, select Print.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 Click Preferences to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click OK.
- **5** Click **OK** or **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.



NOTE: When you print on a small size medium such as an envelope, lift the operator panel so that you can easily remove the printed media from the output tray.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

- Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel
- Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1 Tap Stop.

Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

To cancel a job before it has started printing:

A list of print jobs appears.

- **2** Tap the desired job to cancel.
- 3 Tap Stop.
- 4 Tap Stop Job.

Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

- **2** Select the job you want to cancel.
- **3** Press the <Delete> key.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1 Click Start → Devices and Printers.

For Windows XP: Click start→ Printers and Faxes.

For Windows Vista[®]: Click Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers.

For Windows Server[®] 2008: Click Start→ Control Panel→ Printers.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click Start→ Devices and Printers.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Devices and Printers.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel → Hardware → Devices and Printers.

A list of available printers appears.

- 2 Right-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print, and then select See what's printing.
- **3** Select the printer driver.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

4 Select the job you want to cancel.

5 Press the <Delete> key.

Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or two-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. For sizes that are acceptable for duplex printing, see "Supported Paper Sizes."

Duplex Printing With Duplex Unit

1 Click Start → Devices and Printers.

For Windows XP: Click start → Printers and Faxes.

For Windows Vista: Click Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers.

For Windows Server 2008: Click Start→ Control Panel→ Printers.

For Windows Server 2008 R2: Click Start → Devices and Printers.

For Windows 8: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel \rightarrow Hardware and Sound \rightarrow Devices and Printers.

For Windows Server 2012: Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel → Hardware → Devices and Printers.

2 Right-click the printer and select Printing Preferences.

The General tab appears.

3 From Paper Source, select the paper tray.

For PCL driver:

Select from Auto, Tray1, Tray2, or MPF.

For PS driver:

Select from Automatically Select, Trayl, Tray2, or MPF.

4 From Duplex, select Flip on Short Edge or Flip on Long Edge.

NOTE: For details on the **Flip on Short Edge** and **Flip on Long Edge** options, see "Flip on Short Edge" and "Flip on Long Edge."

5 Click OK.

Using Booklet Print

To use the booklet print feature, select the Enable check box of the Booklet Printing in the Layout tab.



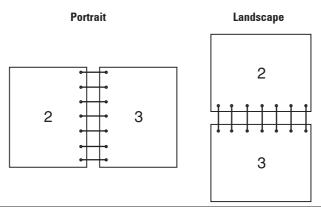
NOTE: When the XPS or PS driver is used, booklet print is not available.



NOTE: You must select **Flip on Long Edge** in the **Duplex** when using the Booklet Print feature.

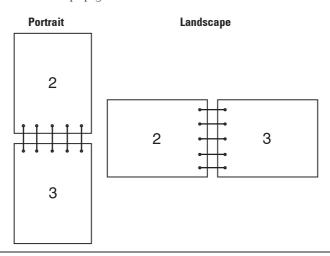
Flip on Long Edge

Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



Flip on Short Edge

Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:



Using the Stored Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the printer driver to store the job in the memory. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel to identify which job in the memory you want to print.



NOTE: The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off.



NOTE: Stored Print feature is available when:

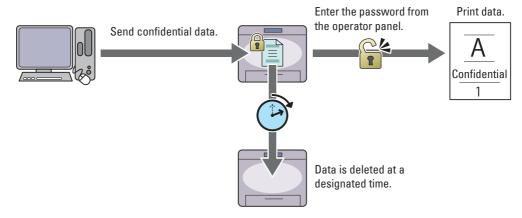
- The RAM disk is enabled in the printer menu.
- RAM Disk is set to Available in the printer driver.

Overview

The stored printing feature includes the following job types.

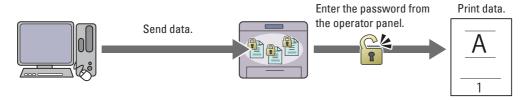
Secure Print

You can temporarily store print jobs secured with a password in the memory. Users with the password can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. A stored print job will be deleted after you print it or at a designated time.



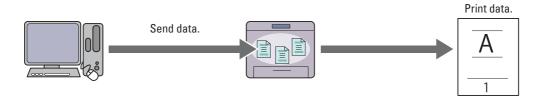
Private Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs secured with a password in the memory. Users with the password can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. The stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel.



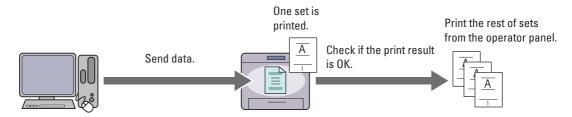
Public Mail Box Print

You can store print jobs without a password in the memory. Any user can print them at a more convenient time from the operator panel. The stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel.



Proof Print

The collated print job is stored in the memory, but a single copy is printed automatically so you can check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.



The difference between each of the job types are listed below. If you want to set the password for confidentiality, store the jobs in the Secure Print or Private Mail Box Print.

Job types	Password	Differences			
Secure Print	Y	The stored jobs will be deleted at a designated time.			
		 You cannot specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel. The quantity of copies depends on the number you specified on the printer driver. 			
Private Mail Box Print	Y	The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel.			
Public Mail Box Print	N	You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.			
Proof Print	N	The print job is set to collate.			
		A single copy is printed automatically.			
		• The stored jobs remain until you delete them from the operator panel.			
		You can specify the quantity of copies from the operator panel.			



NOTE: If a print job is too large for the memory available, the printer may display an error message.

Procedures for Printing Stored Print



NOTE: The stored print feature is available when using the PCL or PS driver.

When you select a job type in the printer driver, the job will be stored in the memory until you request to print it from the operator panel. The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

Storing Print Jobs

To use the stored print feature, you need to select a job type other than Normal Print in the General tab of the printer driver. The job will be stored in the memory until you request to print it from the operator panel.



NOTE: Secure Print and Private Mail Box Print require specifying a password for confidentiality.



NOTE: If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the printer driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

Printing the Stored Jobs

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Print.
- 3 Select a job types such as Secure Print, Private Mailbox, Public Mailbox, or Proof Print. A list of user ID appears.

- 4 Tap vuntil the desired user ID appears, and then tap that user ID.
 - NOTE: Secure Print and Private Mail Box Print require specifying a password for confidentiality. If you select Public Mail Box Print or Proof Print, proceed to step 6.
- **5** Enter the password using the number pad, and then tap OK.
 - For details about specifying the password, see "Specifying your password on the operator panel (Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print)."
- **6** Tap vuntil the desired document appears, and then tap that document.
 - **NOTE:** You can tap Quantity to specify the number of copies. For Secured Print, Quantity is not available.
- 7 Tap Print.
 - **NOTE:** If you want to keep the data in the memory for the time being, clear the **Print and Delete** check box.
- **8** Tap OK.

The stored job will be printed.

Specifying your password on the operator panel (Secure Print/Private Mail Box Print)

When you tap Secure Print or Private Mailbox from Print Menu, a screen to enter the password appears after selecting your user ID.

Use the number pad to enter the numeric password you specified in the printer driver. The password you entered will appear as asterisks (******) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid password, the message Wrong Password Retry appears. Wait 3 seconds, or tap Close to return to the screen for entering the password.

When you enter a valid password, you have access to all print jobs matching the user ID and password you entered. The print jobs matching the password you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or delete jobs matching the password you entered. (See "Printing the Stored Jobs" for more information.)

Deleting Stored Jobs

With Secure Print, a job that has been stored will be deleted after printing or deleted at a designated time entered on the operator panel.

For other jobs, these jobs remain stored until you delete them from the operator panel.

Printing from USB Memory

The USB Direct Print feature allows you to print files stored in a USB memory by operating from the operator panel.



CAUTION: To prevent damage to your printer, do not connect any device other than USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.



CAUTION: Do not remove the USB memory from the front USB port until the printer has finished printing.



NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the print function. If the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to Off, the print function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

The front USB port of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorized USB memory with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB memory.



Supported File Formats

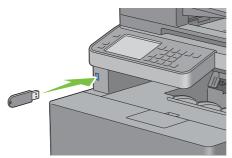
Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB memory.

- TIFF
- **IPEG**

Inserting and Removing a USB Memory

You can insert the USB memory before printing or scanning images.

Before removing the USB memory, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB memory.



CAUTION: If you remove the USB memory while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB memory or the USB memory device itself may be destroyed.

Printing a PDF/TIFF File in a USB Memory

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- **2** Insert a USB memory to the front USB port of the printer. For details about inserting a USB memory, see "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory."
- 3 Tap Print PDF/TIFF.
- 4 Scroll through the page or tap a folder until the desired files appear, and then tap those files.
 - **NOTE:** Only the following characters are displayed on the touch panel: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789\$%''-@{}~!#()&_^
 - **NOTE:** Up to 10 files can be selected and printed in display order.
- **5** Tap 🗖 .
- 6 Specify print options such as Output Color, Select Tray, 2 Sided Printing, Layout, Image Types, Collation, and PDF Password on the Print Settings screen. For details, see "Print PDF/TIFF."
- 7 Tap Print to begin printing.
 - NOTE: Color printing is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to On (Color Password). If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print to On (Color Password), you will need to enter the four digit password.
 - **NOTE:** Only PDF/TIFF files created using the scan features of your printer can be printed through Print PDF/TIFF.

Printing a JPEG File in a USB Memory

- 1 Press (Home) button.
- **2** Insert a USB memory to the front USB port of the printer.

For details about inserting a USB memory, see "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory."

- 3 Tap Print JPEG.
- 4 Scroll through the page or select a folder until the desired files appear, and then tap those files.
 - **NOTE:** Only the following characters are displayed on the touch panel:

 A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z O 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 \$ % ' ' @ {} ~ ! # () & _ ^
 - **NOTE:** Up to 100 files can be selected and printed in display order.
- 5 Tap 🔼 .
- **6** Specify print options such as Output Color, Select Tray, 2 Sided Printing, Layout, Image Types, and Collation on the **Print Settings** screen. For details, see "Print JPEG."
- 7 Tap Print to begin printing.
 - **NOTE:** Color printing is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print is set to On (Color Password). If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Function Enabled setting for USB Direct Print to On (Color Password), you will need to enter the four digit password.
 - **NOTE**: Only JPEG files created using the scan features of your printer can be printed through Print JPEG.

Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the protocol of Microsoft for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

Adding Roles of Printer Services

When you use Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012 client.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click Start → Administrative Tools → Server Manager.
- 2 Select Add Roles from the Action menu.
- 3 Check the Print Services check box on the Server Roles window in the Add Roles Wizard, and then click Next.
- 4 Check the Print Server check box, and then click Next.
- 5 Click Install.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click Start → Administrative Tools → Server Manager.
- **2** Select Add Roles from the Action menu.
- 3 Check the Print and Document Services check box on the Server Roles window in the Add Roles Wizard, and then click Next.
- 4 Click Next.
- **5** Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click Install.

For Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Click Server Manager of the Start screen.
- 2 Select Add Roles and Features from the Manage menu.
- 3 Click Next on the Before You Begin window → Select installation type on the Installation Type window → Select destination server on the Server Selection window in the Add Roles and Features Wizard.
- 4 Check the Print and Document Services check box on the Server Roles window, and then click Next.
- 5 Select features on the Features window → Confirm installation selections on the Confirmation window.
- 6 Click Install.

Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the Software and Documentation disc that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' Add Printer wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1 Click Start→ Devices and Printers (Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel \rightarrow Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012) → Devices and Printers.

- 2 Click Add a printer to launch the Add Printer wizard.
- **3** Select Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click Next.
 - NOTE: In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of http://IP address/ws/.
 - NOTE: If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.

For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.

- 1. Click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- 2. Select Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname and click Next.
- 3. Select Web Services Device from Device type.
- 4. Enter the printer's IP address in the Hostname or IP address text box and click Next.
- NOTE: Before installing the driver using the Add Printer wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:
 - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
 - Add the printer driver to your computer.
- 5 If prompted, install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
- **6** Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
- **7** Print a test page to verify print installation.
 - Click Start→ Devices and Printers (Start→ Control Panel→ Hardware and Sound→ Printers for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

Under Desktop mode, right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click Control Panel → Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012) → Devices and Printers.

- b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click Printer properties (Properties for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).
- c On the General tab, click Print Test Page. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Printing With Wi-Fi Direct™

This section provides information for Wi-Fi Direct printing. Wi-Fi Direct allows your Wi-Fi mobile devices such as computers, smart phone, and tablets, to connect to the printer directly via a Wi-Fi network. With Wi-Fi Direct, you can print documents, photos, or e-mail on your Wi-Fi mobile devices directly without a wireless access point.

- **NOTE:** Wi-Fi Direct is available when the optional wireless adapter is installed.
- **NOTE:** Wi-Fi Direct is available even if the printer is connected to your wireless network connection using the optional wireless adapter.
- **NOTE:** Only printing function is available via the Wi-Fi Direct network.
- **NOTE**: The maximum number of devices that can be connected via the Wi-Fi Direct network is 1.
- **NOTE:** You cannot connect your mobile device to the internet via the printer's Wi-Fi Direct network.
- **NOTE:** Depending on the device, the channel used to connect the device to the printer via Wi-Fi Direct may differ from the channel used by the printer to connect to a network via Wi-Fi infrastructure mode. In such a case, simultaneous connection with Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi infrastructure mode may not work properly.
- **NOTE**: The printer connected with Wi-Fi Direct supports the following protocols; LPD, Port9100, WSD (print), Bonjour (mDNS), SNMPv1/v2c, Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Setting Up Wi-Fi Direct

To use Wi-Fi Direct, you need to set Wi-Fi Direct settings from the operator panel, and then connect the Wi-Fi Direct network from your Wi-Fi mobile devices.

The set up procedure is different depending on whether the device is Wi-Fi Direct certified or not. To check if the device is Wi-Fi Direct certified or not, see the specification of the device or contact the manufacturer of the device.

If the device connecting to the printer is Wi-Fi Direct certified, the device and the printer can automatically recognize each other as a Wi-Fi Direct device. From the device, simply select the device name of the printer from the list of Wi-Fi Direct devices. Connection is made when pairing is accepted on the operator panel of the printer. For details, see "For Wi-Fi Direct Certified Devices."

If the device connecting to the printer is not Wi-Fi Direct certified, select the SSID of the printer from the list of wireless networks on the device and enter the passphrase necessary for connection. This is the same as connecting the device to a wireless router or an access point. For details, see "For Devices That Are Not Wi-Fi Direct Certified."

For Wi-Fi Direct Certified Devices

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 5 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 6 Tap Enable, and then tap OK.
 When a popup message about the devices that are not Wi-Fi Direct certified is displayed, tap Close.
- 7 Tap Group Role.
- 8 Tap Auto.

- 9 Tap Connection Status.
- **10** Ensure no device is connected with the Wi-Fi Direct connection.
 - **NOTE:** When other device is connected (1 is displayed on Connection Status), you cannot use the Wi-Fi Direct connection. Disconnect the other device from the Wi-Fi Direct network. See "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network."
- 11 Install the printer on the mobile device.

The following procedure uses a Wi-Fi Direct certified device running Windows RT as an example.

- a Tap Devices in the PC settings menu.
- **b** Tap Add a device in the Devices sub-menu.
- **c** Tap the printer name (factory default: Dell C2665dnf_xxxxxx).

The popup dialog box is displayed on the operator panel.

12 Tap Yes to accept pairing request from the Wi-Fi certified device.

When a PIN is displayed on the operator panel, enter the PIN on the Wi-Fi certified device. Tap OK to accept pairing request from the Wi-Fi certified device.

The printer is paired with the device and ready for use.

For Devices That Are Not Wi-Fi Direct Certified

Setting Up the Printer

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 5 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 6 Tap Enable, and then tap OK.

When a popup message about the devices that are not Wi-Fi Direct certified is displayed, tap Close.

- 7 Tap Group Role.
- 8 Tap Group Owner, and then tap OK.
- 9 Tap Connection Status.
- **10** Ensure no device is connected with the Wi-Fi Direct connection.
 - **NOTE:** When other device is connected (1 is displayed on Connection Status), you cannot use the Wi-Fi Direct connection. Disconnect the other device from the Wi-Fi Direct network. See "Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network."
- 11 The printer must be rebooted after you set Wi-Fi Direct. After the reboot, repeat steps from 1 to 4.
- 12 Tap vintil SSID and Passphrase appears, and tap each menu to check what the SSID and passphrase is.
 - **NOTE:** To confirm the printer's SSID and passphrase, you can also print the list by tapping Print Passphrase under the Passphrase menu.

Setting Up the Mobile Device

1 Connect the mobile device to the Wi-Fi Direct network.

For Windows 8, Windows RT

- **a** Tap Settings in the PC settings menu.
- **b** Tap the Wi-Fi icon.
- **c** Tap the printer's SSID, and then tap Connect.

d Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Next**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows 7

- a Click on the network icon on the taskbar.
- **b** Click the printer's SSID.
- **c** Enter the passphrase, and then click **Connect**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows Vista

- a Click Start → Connect To.
- **b** Click the printer's SSID.
- **c** Enter the passphrase, and then click **Connect**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Windows XP

- a Click Start → Control Panel → Network Connections.
- **b** Right-click on the Wireless Network Connection icon, and then select View Available Wireless Networks.
- c Click the printer's SSID, and then click Connect.
- d Enter the passphrase, and then click Connect.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For iOS

- a Tap Settings → Wi-Fi.
- **b** Tap the printer's SSID.
- **c** Enter the passphrase, and then tap **Join**.

The mobile device will connect to the printer.

For Android™

The procedure varies depending on your mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device.

2 Install the printer on the mobile device.

For Windows 8, Windows RT

- a Click Devices in the PC settings menu.
- **b** Click Add a device in the Devices sub-menu.
- c Click Dell_xxxxxx.

The printer is ready for use.

For Windows 7

- a Click Start → Devices and Printers.
- **b** Click Add a device in the device's sub-menu.
- c Click Dell xxxxxx.

The printer is ready for use.

For Windows Vista

- a Click Start \rightarrow Control Panel \rightarrow Hardware and Sound \rightarrow Printers.
- **b** Click Add a device in the Devices sub-menu.
- c Click Dell xxxxxx.

The printer is ready for use.

For Windows XP

You need to install the printer driver on the mobile device. See "Installing Printer Drivers on Windows® Computers."

For iOS

You need to install the printing application such as Mobile Print App for Dell, and then the printer is ready for use.

For Android

You need to install the printing application such as Dell Mobile Print, and then the printer is ready for use.

Printing via Wi-Fi Direct

The printing procedure varies depending on your mobile device you are using. Refer to the manual provided with your mobile device to print as you normally do from the device.

Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct Network

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap Connection Status.
 - **NOTE:** The Connection Status menu is displayed only when the printer is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.
- **3** Tap the device name to disconnect.
- 4 Tap Disconnect Now or Disconnect and Reset Passphrase.
- 5 Tap Yes.

The selected device is successfully disconnected.

You can also disconnect the device from the following steps.

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 5 Tap Connection Status.
- **6** Tap the device name to disconnect.
- 7 Tap Disconnect now.
- 8 Tap Yes.

Resetting the Passphrase

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.

- **5** Tap ▼ until Passphrase appears, and then tap Passphrase.
- 6 Tap Reset Passphrase.
- 7 Tap Yes.
 The Wi-Fi Direct is disconnected and the passphrase is reset.

Resetting the PIN

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Wi-Fi Direct.
- 5 Tap ▼ until WPS Setup appears, and then tap WPS Setup.
- 6 Tap PIN Code.
- 7 Tap Reset Code.
- 8 Tap Yes.

The Wi-Fi Direct is disconnected and the PIN is reset.

Mobile Printing

The Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer supports printing from a variety of mobile devices.

Android OS

Download the Dell Mobile Print app for free from Google Play™. Easy to use and navigate, the Dell Mobile Print app enables direct printing of photos, documents web content and more, to supported Dell printers on a Wi-Fi or Ethernet network.

Scan the QR Code[®] for quick access to the relevant application store.



For Android OS

Apple[®] iOS

This printer is compatible with AirPrint. For details about AirPrint, see "Printing With AirPrint." This printer is also compatible with Mobile Print App for Dell by ThinxtreamTM, available for free download from App Store.

Scan the QR Code for quick access to the relevant application store.



For Apple iOS

Printing With AirPrint



This section provides information for printing with AirPrint. AirPrint allows you to print through a network with iPad (all models), iPhone (3GS or later), and iPod touch (3rd generation or later) running the latest version of iOS. AirPrint also allows you to accomplish basic network printing with Macintosh (Mac OS X 10.7 or later) without installing additional drivers.

Setting Up AirPrint on Your Printer

To use AirPrint, Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP protocols are required on your printer. Make sure that Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are set to Enable on the operator panel menu. See "Protocols" for details. Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP can also be enabled by clicking Turn on AirPrint from the Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool. Follow the procedure below to configure the environment settings for AirPrint from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

- **1** Ensure that the printer is connected to the network.
- 2 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 3 When the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool opens, go to the pages in the Print Server Settings tab. Click Turn on AirPrint in Enable AirPrint. The printer is ready for AirPrint.



NOTE: If the Turn on AirPrint button is not active, it means that both Bonjour (mDNS) and IPP are already set to Enable on the operator panel menu and the printer is ready for AirPrint.

Printing via AirPrint

The following procedure uses the iPhone running iOS5 as an example.

- 1 Open your email, photo, web page, or document you want to print.
- **2** Tap the action icon **2**.
- 3 Tap Print.
- **4** Select your printer and set printer options.
- 5 Tap Print.



NOTE: To cancel the printing job, double click the Home button, tap the Print Center icon at 1. If there are more than one job in the queue, select the job you want to cancel, then tap Cancel Printing.

Printing With Google Cloud Print™

This section provides information for Google Cloud Print service with your smart phone, tablet, or any other device. By registering the printer to your GoogleTM account, you can use the Google Cloud Print service to print from various devices connected to the Internet. You can print documents, photos or e-mails using the Google ChromeTM browser or applications such as Google DriveTM on your mobile device. For more information about Google Cloud Print, visit the Google web site.

Preparing to Use the Printer with Google Cloud Print

To use Google Cloud Print, you need to prepare the following in advance:

- Connect the printer to a network that has access to the Internet.

 - **NOTE:** Google Cloud Print supports only IPv4 connection.



NOTE: If the printer is connected to a network that uses a proxy server, you need to specify the settings in Proxy Server from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For more information, see "Proxy Server."

Acquire a Google account and a GmailTM address.

• Set Google Cloud Print to Enable from the operator panel menu, or set Google Cloud Print to On from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

When using the operator panel

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Network.
- 4 Tap Protocols.
- **5** Tap until Google Cloud Print appears, and then tap Google Cloud Print.
- 6 Tap Enable.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

When using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- When the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool opens, go to the pages in the Print Server Settings tab. Click Port Settings. In Port Status, select the On check box for Google Cloud Print.

Registering the Printer to Your Google Account

To register the printer to your Google account, follow the procedure below.

- 1 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool by entering IP address of the printer in your web browser. For more information, see "Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool" and "Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 When the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool opens, go to the pages in the Print Server Settings tab. Click Register This Device to Google Cloud Print in Google Cloud Print. A sheet with a URL for the Google Cloud Print printer registration web site is printed.
- **3** From the web browser of your computer, visit the Google web site and sign in with your Google account. Visit the Google Cloud Print registration web site by entering the URL on the printout into your web browser. You can also visit the site by scanning the QR code with your mobile device.
- **4** On the Google Cloud Print registration web site, click **Finish printer registration**.
- 5 Click Manage your printers. Your printer will be listed in the Printers list and will be ready for use with the Google Cloud Print service.

Printing via Google Cloud Print

The printing procedure varies depending on the application or the device you are using. You can see the application list that supports Google Cloud Print service on the Google web site.

Printing From an Application on a Mobile Device

The following procedure uses the Google Drive application on an Android mobile device as an example.

- 1 Install the Google Drive application on your mobile device.
 - **NOTE:** You can download the application from Google Play.
- 2 Access the Google Drive application from your mobile device and tap > to select the document.
- 3 Tap and then tap Print.
- 4 Select your printer from the list.

5 Select printer options and then tap **Print**.

Printing From Google Chrome

The following procedure uses the Google Chrome browser on a Windows PC as an example.

- 1 Open the Google Chrome browser.
- **2** Open the web page or e-mail that you want to print.
- 3 Click Nor (varies depending on the version of the Google Chrome browser) in the top right corner and then click Print.
- 4 Click Change in the Destination area.
- **5** Choose your printer from the Google Cloud Print area.
- 6 Click Print.

Printing a Report Page

You can print a variety of settings for your printer including system settings, panel setting, and font list. For details about how to print reports or lists, see "Report / List."

Printer Settings

You can change most of the print settings from the application you are printing from. If your printer is attached to the network, you can also change settings from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. To launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Settings from the application update the default system settings for the printer. Settings from the printer driver only apply to the job that you are currently sending to the printer.

If you cannot change a setting from the application, use the operator panel, Tool Box or the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. Changing a system setting from the operator panel, Tool Box or from the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool makes that setting the user default.

You can verify the detailed system settings by printing a system settings report. For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Report / List."

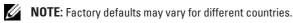
You can reset settings to their default values from the Tool Box or the operator panel. For details, see "When Using the Tool Box" or "When Using the Operator Panel."

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see some menu items are highlighted.

These highlighted items are the factory default and original system settings.



When you select a new setting from the operator panel, the item selected is highlighted to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Driver settings may override changes previously made and may require you to change the operator panel defaults.

Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to Change the Printer Settings

If your printer is connected to the network, you can change the printer settings from your web browser. If you are a network administrator, you can clone the system settings of one printer to one or all the printers on the network.

Type the IP address of your printer in your web browser. Choose **Printer Settings** from the topics list. From the **Printer Settings** tab, select the **System Settings** to change the printer settings.

To change the paper type and size, choose **Tray Management** from the topics list. To change the ColorTrack settings, choose **Print Volume** from the topics list, and then select the **Dell ColorTrack** tab.

To copy your system settings to another printer on the network, choose Copy Printer Settings from the topics list, and then type the other printer's IP address.

If you do not know your printer's IP address, see the system settings report or display the TCP/IP settings. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Copying



NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the copy function. If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to Off, the copy function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, select the desired paper tray to be used for the copy job.

To select the tray:

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- **2** Tap Copy.
- 3 Tap Select Tray.
- 4 Tap the desired tray, and then tap OK.

You can select MPF, Tray1, or Tray2*.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning, and sending a fax. You can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) documents for one job using the DADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.



MARNING: Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 inches by 5.5 inches (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 inches by 14 inches (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in the DADF.



WARNING: Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, torn paper, photographs, or transparencies cannot be used in the DADF.



WARNING: Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in the DADF.



NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

^{*} Tray2 is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder (tray2) is installed.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

NOTE: A computer connection is not required for copying.

NOTE: Remove any documents from the DADF before copying from the document glass.

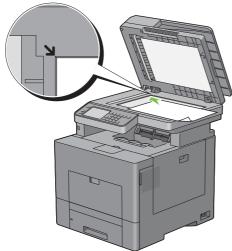
NOTE: Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy output. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner."

To make a copy from the document glass:

1 Lift and open the document cover.



2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



3 Close the document cover.

NOTE: Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

NOTE: If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

4 Press the (Home) button.

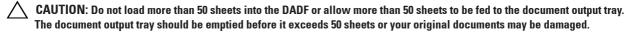
To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 7.

5 Tap Copy.

To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken/Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

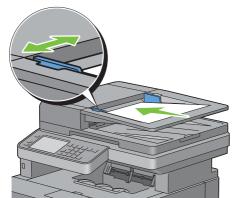
- **NOTE**: The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.
- **6** Tap or + to specify the number of copies from 1 to 99 in the Quantity tile.
- **7** Tap Copy to begin copying.
 - **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by tapping Stop.

Making Copies From the DADF





1 Load the document(s) facing up on the DADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the document size.



- **NOTE**: Ensure that you use the document stopper before copying a legal-size document.
- 2 Press the (Home) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 5.

3 Тар Сору.

To customize the copy settings such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken/Lighten, see "Setting Copy Options."

- **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.
- 4 Tap or + to specify the number of copies from 1 to 99 in the Quantity tile.
- **5** Tap Copy to begin copying.
 - **NOTE:** You can cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document by tapping Stop.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before tapping Copy to begin copying.

For details about making copies, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" and "Making Copies From the DADF."

NOTE: The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

Options on each tile are below:

- Copy tile
 - Quantity
 - Darken / Lighten
 - Output Color
 - Select Tray
 - 2 Sided Copying
 - Sharpness
 - Reduce / Enlarge
 - Original Size
 - Original Type
 - Collation
 - 2-Up
 - Color Saturation
 - Margin
 - Auto Exposure

Quantity

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

1 Tap – or + to specify the number of copies.

Darken / Lighten

To adjust the contrast to make the copy darker or lighter than the original:

- 1 Tap Darken/Lighten.
- 2 Drag the desired level on the Darken/Lighten bar, and then tap OK.

You can select a contrast level from seven levels between Darken and Lighten.

Drag the indicator on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast darker.

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.	
Darken 2		
Darken l		
Normal*	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.	
Lighten l	Works well with dark documents.	
Lighten 2		
Lighten 3		

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Output Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying:

- 1 Tap Output Color.
- 2 Tap Full Color or Black & White.



NOTE: Color copy is secured with a password if the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Color Password). If you set Output Color to Full Color and the Function Enabled setting for Copy to On (Color Password), you will need to enter the four digit password.

Select Tray

To select the tray:

- 1 Tap Select Tray.
- **2** Tap the desired setting, and then tap OK.

MPF	The paper is fed from the multipurpose feeder.	
Trayl*	The paper is fed from tray1.	
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550-sheet feeder.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.



NOTE: Tray2 is only available when the optional 550-sheet feeder is installed.



NOTE: When Any is displayed as the paper size and type in the MPF, you can select the paper size and type from this menu. For details, see "Select Tray."

2 Sided Copying

To make duplex copies with the specified binding position:

- 1 Swipe the screen until 2 Sided Copying appears, and then tap 2 Sided Copying.
- **2** Tap the desired setting, and then tap OK.

$1 \rightarrow 1 \text{ Sided*}$	Select 1 sided or 2 sided and specify binding position for the 2 sided copy.
$1 \rightarrow 2$ Sided	_
$2 \rightarrow 1$ Sided	_
$2 \rightarrow 2$ Sided	_
Long Edge Binding	_
Short Edge Binding	_

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to $1 \rightarrow 2$ Sided or $2 \rightarrow 2$ Sided, the display prompts you for another page after tapping Copy.

- If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap Continue.
- If you finish copying, tap Print Now.



NOTE: When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set Original Size to the same size as the document.

Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original:

- 1 Swipe the screen until Sharpness appears, and then tap Sharpness.
- **2** Tap the desired setting.

Sharpen	Makes the copy image sharper than the original.	
Normal*	The color clarity of the image is the same as the original.	
Soften	Makes the copy image softer than the original.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Reduce / Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25 to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or DADF:



NOTE: When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

- 1 Swipe the screen until Reduce/Enlarge appears, and then tap Reduce/Enlarge.
- **2** Tap the desired setting, and then tap OK.

(Inch series)

100%*
50%
64% (Ledger→Letter)
78% (Legal→Letter)
129% (Statement→Letter)
154% (Statement→Legal)
200%
(mm series)
100%*
50%
70% (A4→A5)
81% (B5→A5)
122% (A5→B5)
141% (A5→A4)
200%

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.



NOTE: You can also specify the value in increments of 1 percent from 25 to 400 by tapping – or +.

Original Size

To select the default document size:

- 1 Swipe the screen until Original Size appears, and then tap Original Size.
- **2** Tap the desired setting.

(Inch series)

Auto*
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Executive (7.3x10.5")
(mm series)
Auto*
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5x13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.3x10.5")

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Original Type

To select the copy image quality:

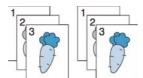
- 1 Swipe the screen until Original Type appears, and then tap Original Type.
- **2** Tap the desired setting.

Photo & Text*	Used for documents with both photos and text.	
Text	Used for documents with text.	
Photo	Used for documents with photos.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Collation

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will be printed followed by the second complete document:



- 1 Swipe the screen until Collation appears, and then tap Collation.
- **2** Tap the desired setting.

Auto*	Only the documents loaded from DADF are copied in collated order.
Collated	Copies in collated order.
Uncollated	Does not copy in collated order.

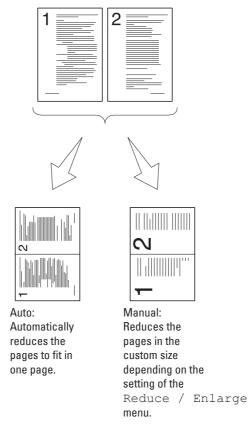
^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to Collated, the display prompts you for another page after tapping Copy.

- If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap Continue.
- If you finish copying, tap Print Now.

2-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper:



- 1 Swipe the screen until 2-Up appears, and then tap 2-Up.
- 2 Tap the desired setting, and then tap OK.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.	
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.	
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce / Enlarge.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to Auto or Manual, the display prompts you for another page after tapping Copy.

- If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap Continue.
- If you finish copying, tap Print Now.



NOTE: When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set Original \mathtt{Size} to the same size as the document.

Color Saturation

To adjust the amount of colors of the copy to make the colors darker or lighter than the original:

- 1 Swipe the screen until Color Saturation appears, and then tap Color Saturation.
- **2** Tap the desired setting.

High	Makes the color of the copy more vivid.	
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.	
Low	Makes the color of the copy less vivid.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Margin

To specify the margins of the copy:

- 1 Swipe the screen until Margin appears, and then tap Margin.
- **2** Tap or + to enter the desired value, and then tap OK.

Top / Bottom	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0.0–2.0 inches (0–50 mm)	_
Left / Right	0.2 inch* (4 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0-2.0 inches (0-50 mm)	_
Middle	0 inches* (0 mm*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	Available Range: 0-2.0 inches (0-50 mm)	_

^{*} Denotes the factory default settings.

Auto Exposure

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy:

- 1 Swipe the screen until Auto Exposure appears, and then tap Auto Exposure.
- **2** Tap On.

Using the ID Copy



NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for ID Copy is set to Disable, the ID copy function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by tapping ID Copy on the touch panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

To make a copy:

- 1 Place an ID card facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover. For details about loading a document, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass."
- **2** Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap ID Copy.

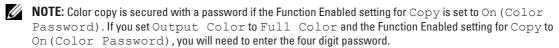
- **4** Specify the copy settings below as required.
 - Quantity
 - Darken / Lighten
 - Output Color
 - Select Tray
 - Sharpness
 - Color Saturation
 - Auto Exposure

For details, see "Setting Copy Options."

5 Tap Copy to begin copying.

After the front side of the ID card is scanned, the display prompts you to turn over the card.

- **a** To scan the back side of the ID card, turn the ID card over and tap Continue.
- **b** To finish copying, tap Print Now.



Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the copy menu options such as Output Color, Select Tray, and Darken/Lighten can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the operator panel.

The settings on Default Settings will be reflected when you create a new tile.

To create your own default settings:

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Default Settings.
- 3 Tap Copy Defaults.
- **4** Tap until the desired menu item appears, and then tap that menu item.
- **5** Tap the desired setting or enter the value, and then tap OK.
- **6** Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.

Scanning



NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function (Scan to E-mail, Scan to Network, Scan to PC, Scan to WSD, or Scan to USB) is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use that scan function. If the Function Enabled setting for a scan function is set to Off, that scan function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the screen. For details, see "Function Enabled."

Scanning Overview

Use your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer provides several ways to scan your document. There are two main scanning types. One is operated on the printer side without using the scanner driver, and the other is operated on the computer side using a software and the scanner driver. See the available features below to help you find the information you need.

- Scanning With scanner driver
- Scanning Without scanner driver

Scanning - With scanner driver

Scan into a graphic software such as Adobe® Photoshop® using a TWAIN driver (Supporting USB and Network connections for both Microsoft® Windows® and Apple Macintosh using a graphic software)

See "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver."

Scan into a Microsoft's default program such as Windows Photo Gallery and Microsoft Paint, using a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver

(Supporting USB and Network (including WSD*) connections on Windows only)

* WSD (Web Services on Devices)

See "Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver."

Scan and send the scanned document to computer connected via USB cable

(Supporting USB connection for both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh using bundled software tool of ScanButton Manager)

Using the feature of Scan to PC on the operator panel of your printer, the scanned image is saved in the location of your computer specified with the ScanButton Manager.

See "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC."

Scanning - Without scanner driver

Scan and save the scanned document in a USB memory See "Scanning to a USB Memory."

Scan and send the scanned document by e-mail

See "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image."

Scan and send the scanned document to computer or server connected to network See "Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP."

Scan and send the scanned document to a computer connected to a network using WSD See "Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD."

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Туре	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning above these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC



NOTE: You must connect your computer via USB for selecting the Scan to PC feature from the operator panel. Network connection is not supported.



NOTE: This feature is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.

Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

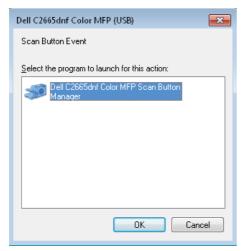
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- **2** Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Scan to PC.
- 4 Specify scan settings such as Output Color, Resolution, File Format, 2-Sided Scanning, Darken/Lighten, Contrast, Sharpness, Auto Exposure, Original Size, Margin, and File Naming Mode. For details, see "Scan Settings."
- **5** Tap Scan to begin scanning the document.



NOTE: If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager, and then click OK.

For Microsoft Windows:

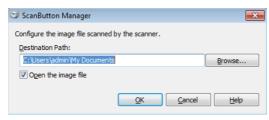


- NOTE: Once you select Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager with the Always use this program for this action check box selected, Dell C2665dnf Color MFP ScanButton Manager will automatically open without selecting an application.
- NOTE: You must use ScanButton Manager on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "ScanButton
- NOTE: For Macintosh, the dialog box for selecting a program is not displayed.

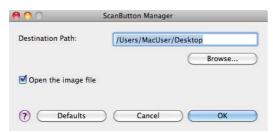
ScanButton Manager

The Scan to PC stores the image files in the My Documents folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use ScanButton Manager to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using WSD (Web Services on Devices), you can use the Scan to WSD function to send scanned images to a computer.

NOTE: To use Scan to WSD, you need to setup connection using WSD.

NOTE: WSD is supported only on Windows Vista[®], Windows 7, and Windows 8.

Printer Setup for Scan to WSD

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

Checking the Printer Setting

To use the Scan to WSD function, Scan to WSD needs to be set to Enable. See "Protocols" for details.

Setting Up the Computer



NOTE: For Windows 8, the computer automatically connects the printer using WSD. There is no need to install the printer manually.

For Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start→ Computer→ Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click Install. The printer is connected using WSD.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click Start → Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click Install.
- **3** Click Continue. The printer is connected using WSD.

Procedures for Scan to WSD

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Scan to WSD.
- 4 Swipe the screen until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to appears, and then select that computer.
- **5** Specify the type of scan. For details, see "Scan to WSD."
- 6 Tap Scan to begin sending the scanned file.

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images that supports Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Apple Mac OS X 10.5, Mac OS X 10.6, Mac OS X 10.7, Mac OS X 10.8 works with various scanners.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.
OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- **2** Start the drawing software that supports TWAIN.
- **3** To set the location where to store the scanned images:

Click Desktop→ Folders.

In the Folders panel, specify a destination folder.

4 To set the scanner:

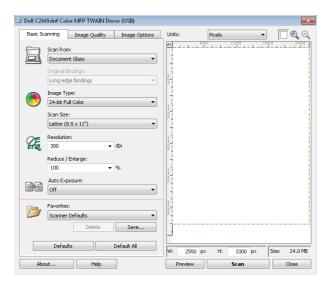
Click Desktop→ Scan Settings→ Select...

In the Available Scanners dialog box, select TWAIN: Dell C2665dnf Color MFP, and then click OK.

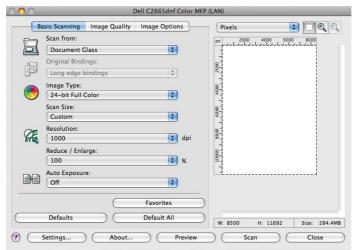
- 5 Make sure that Display scanner dialog box check box is selected on the Scan or Get Photo panel.
- **6** Click **Scan** to begin scanning process.

The Dell C2665dnf Color MFP TWAIN Driver window appears.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



- **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.
- 7 In the Basic Scanning tab, set the desired preferences, and click Preview to display the preview image.
 - **NOTE:** The **Preview** feature cannot be used when performing duplex (two-sided) scanning from the DADF.
- 8 Adjust the settings in the Image Quality and Image Option tabs.
- **9** Click Scan to start scanning.
- **10** When the scanning is completed, click Close to exit the window.
- The scanned image is automatically saved in the specified location. If you want to scan more pages, follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

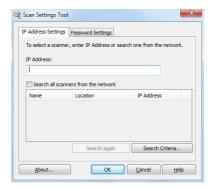
Scan Settings Tool

You can check the IP address of the printer or set the password using the Scan Settings Tool.

To open the Scan Settings Tool:

For Microsoft Windows:

Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Scan Settings Tool.



For Apple Macintosh:

Click Settings on the main scanning window of the Dell C2665dnf Color MFP window.



IP Address Settings

In the IP Address Settings tab, you can check the IP address that is set for your scanner or change the scanner selection.

IP Address

Enter the IP address.

Search all scanners from the network (Windows only)

Searches scanners in your network.

Scanner List

Displays a list of scanners that are detected.

Search again

Searches the scanners in your network.

Search Criteria (Windows only) Displays the Search Criteria dialog box for setting the search condition.

Search Criteria Dialog Box (Windows only)



Subnet Address

Enter the subnet address.

- IPv4: Broadcast Address such as "192.168.1.255"
- IPv6: Multicast Address such as "ff02::1"
- Search Time

Specify a time period for searching a scanner.

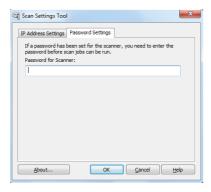
Community Name

Enter the SNMPv1/v2 community name. The default community name is "public."

Password Setting

In the Password Setting tab, you can input the password that is set for your scanner to access from your computer to the printer.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



Password for Scanner Enter the password.

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.



NOTE: The Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver is supported only on Windows.

To scan an image from the drawing software:

Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF. OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

2 Start the drawing software, such as Microsoft Paint for Windows.

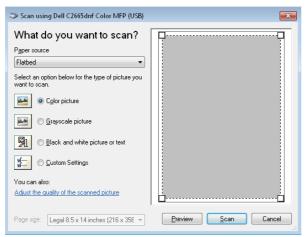




NOTE: When using applications that utilize WIA 2.0, such as Windows Fax and Scan on Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows 8, the Feeder (Scan both sides) option can be selected for duplex (two-sided) scanning.

Click File→ From Scanner or Camera (Paint button→ From scanner or camera for Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012).

The Scan using Dell C2665dnf Color MFP (USB or LAN) window appears.



- **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.
- 4 Select your desired type of picture that you want to scan, and click Adjust the quality of the scanned picture to display the Advanced Properties dialog box.
- **5** Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click Scan to start scanning.
- Click File→ Save to save your scanned document in your desired location on your computer.

To scan an image from Control Panel:

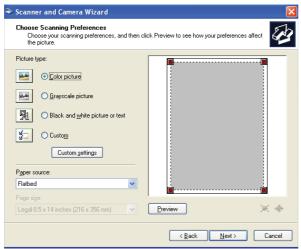
- **NOTE:** This feature is supported on Microsoft Window Server 2003 and Windows XP only.
- Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF. OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Click Start→ Control Panel→ Printers and Other Hardware→ Scanners and Cameras.
- 3 Double-click the scanner icon. The Scanner and Camera Wizard launches.

4 Click Next to display the Choose Scanning Preferences page.



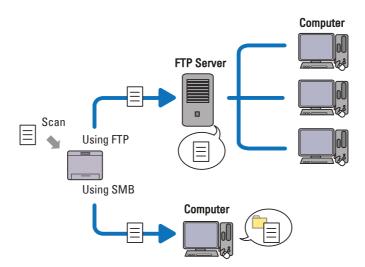
- **NOTE:** The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.
- **5** Select your desired type of picture, paper source, and paper size, and click **Next**.
- **6** Enter a picture name, select a file format, and specify the desired location to save the scanned document.
- 7 Click Next to start scanning.
- 8 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP

NOTE: This feature does not require a network scan driver.

Overview

The Scan to Network feature allows you to send the scanned documents to a computer or FTP server.



Required operating systems:

For FTP:

NOTE: For information on how to configure the FTP service, refer to the manual provided with the software.



NOTE: Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Mac OS X 10.5 support IPv4 only.

Microsoft Windows XP Professional

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 5.1

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

Microsoft Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Server 2008

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0

Microsoft Windows 7

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.5

Microsoft Windows 8

Microsoft Windows Server 2012

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0

Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8

FTP service of Mac OS X

For SMB:



NOTE: Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Mac OS X 10.5/10.6 support IPv4 only.

- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- Microsoft Windows 7
- Microsoft Windows 8
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012
- Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8

Procedures

For FTP:

- 1 "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"
- 2 "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

For SMB:

- 1 "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)"
- 2 "Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)"

- **3** "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book"
- **4** "Sending the Scanned File on the Network"

Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)

The Scan to Network feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

For Microsoft Windows:



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

For Windows XP:

- 1 Click start→ Control Panel→ User Accounts.
- 2 Click Change an account.
- 3 Click Create a password and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- **2** Click User Accounts and Family Safety.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Double-click User Accounts.
- 3 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click Start→ Control Panel.
- 2 Select User Accounts.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

1 Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click Settings.

- 2 Click Change PC settings.
- Click Users.
- 4 Click Create a Password and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

- **1** Click System Preferences→ Accounts.
- 2 Select Change Password.
- **3** Enter a password for your user login account in New password.
- Re-enter the password in Verify.

Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)

Create a shared folder to store the scanned document from your printer.

For Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition:

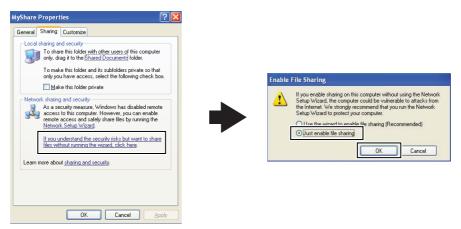
- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- **2** Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
- **3** Click on the Sharing tab, and then select Share this folder on the network.
- **4** Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.
 - **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



5 Select the Allow network users to change my files check box, and click OK.



NOTE: When the following screen appears, click If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here, then select Just enable file sharing, and then click OK.



NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:

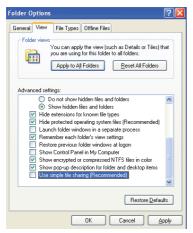
Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

For Microsoft Windows XP Professional:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare) and double-click the folder.
- **2** Select Folder Options from Tools.



3 Click View tab, and then clear the check box of Use simple file sharing (Recommended).



4 Click OK.

- **5** Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**. The Properties dialog box appears.
- **6** Select the Sharing tab, and then select Share this folder.
- 7 Enter a shared name in the Share name box.
 - **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



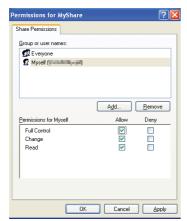
- Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 9 Click Add.
- Search user login name by clicking Advanced, or enter the user login name in Enter the object names to select box and click Check Names to confirm (Example of user login name, Myself).



Click OK.

NOTE: Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

12 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select Full Control check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.



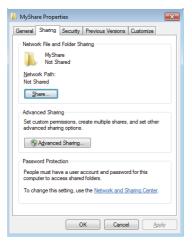
- 13 Click OK.
 - **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

For example:

Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

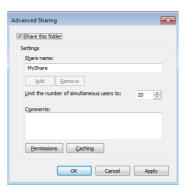
For Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Right-click on the folder, and then select Properties.
 The Properties dialog box appears.



- 3 Click on the Sharing tab, and then select Advanced Sharing.
- 4 Select the Share this folder check box.

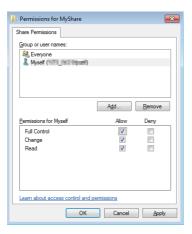
- **5** Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.
 - **NOTE:** Write down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



- **6** Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click Add.
- Search user login name by clicking Advanced, or enter the user login name in Enter the object names to select box and click Check Names to confirm (Example of user login name, Myself).



- 9 Click OK.
- 10 Click on the user login name that you have just entered. Select Full Control check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.
 - **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



11 Click OK.



NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- **2** Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- **3** Select the **Shared Folder** check box.
- 4 Open System Preferences, and then click Sharing.
- **5** Select the File Sharing check box, and then click Options.
- **6** Select the **Share Files and folders using SMB** and account name check boxes.
- 7 Click Done.

Setting a Destination Using an Address Book

You can register the connection details for SMB and FTP server in the address book using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool or Address Book Editor.

Before beginning to setup a destination, make sure you have the IP addresses you need such as printer and computer.

Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer

To setup the server address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the printer. To find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Locating the IP Address Setting of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer by the following operations.

1 Click Start → Run.

For Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2:

Click Start→ Run.

For Windows Vista/Windows 7:

Click Start→ All Programs→ Accessories→ Run.

For Windows 8/Windows Server 2012:

Point to the top or bottom right corner of the screen, and then click Search → Type Run in the search box, click Apps, and then click Run.

- **2** Type cmd in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.
- **3** Type ipconfig and press Enter.
- **4** Write down the IP Address xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Open a web browser.
- **2** Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the <Enter> key.

The web page of the printer appears.

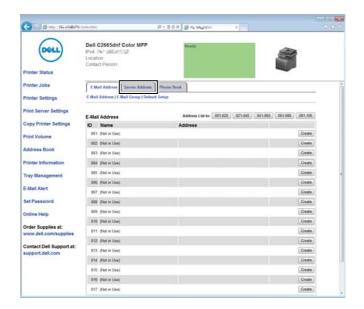


NOTE: For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

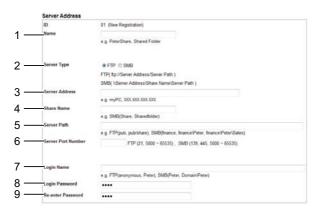
- 3 Click Address Book. If a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct User Name and Password.
 - **NOTE:** The default user name is "admin", and the default password is left blank (NULL).



4 Click the Server Address tab, and then click Create of an ID.



Server Address page appears.



To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

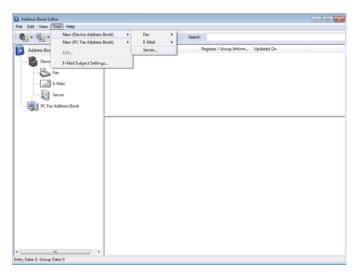
(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
(2) Server Type	Select FTP if you store document on a FTP server. Select SMB if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer.
(3) Server Address	Enter a FTP server name that you have shared out or a server name or IP address of your computer.
	• For FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100
	• For SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
	• For SMB: e.g. Share, Sharefolder
(5) Server Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.
	• For FTP: e.g. pub, pub/share
	• For SMB: e.g. finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales
(6) Server Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP or 139 fo SMB.
	Available ports are: FTP: 21, 5000 - 65535 SMB: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535
(7) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server.
	• For FTP: Contact the system administrator.
	• For SMB: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.
(8) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
	For FTP: Contact the system administrator
	• For SMB: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)

(9) Re-enter Re-enter your password. Password

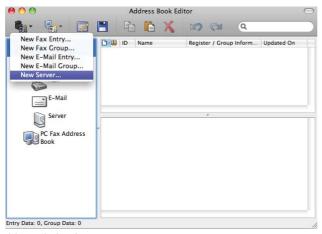
Using Address Book Editor

- 1 Click Start→ All Programs→ Dell Printers→ Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→ Address Book
- 2 Click Tool→ New (Device Address Book)→ Server.

For Microsoft Windows:

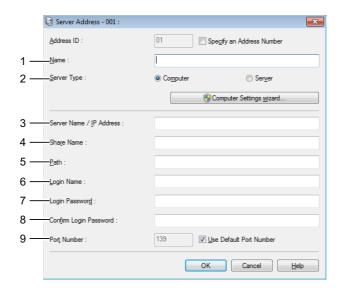


For Apple Macintosh:

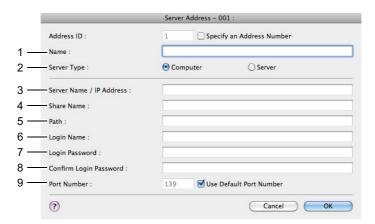


Server Address dialog box appears.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

(1) Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.	
(2) Server Type	Select Computer if you store documents in a shared folder on your computer. Select Server if you store documents on a FTP server.	
(3) Server Name/IP	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server name that you have shared out.	
Address	The following are examples:	
	• For Computer:	
	Server name: myhost	
	IP address: 192.168.1.100	
	• For Server:	
	Server name: myhost.example.com	
	(myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)	
	IP address: 192.168.1.100	

-		
(4) Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.	
	• For SMB: e.g. Share, Sharefolder	
(5) Path	Enter the subdirectory path where you want the scanned document to be stored. Ensure that the subdirectory path is already created in the shared folder or FTP server.	
	• For FTP: e.g. pub, pub/share	
	• For SMB: e.g. finance, finance\Peter, finance\Peter\Sales	
(6) Login Name	Enter the user account name to allow access to a shared folder on your computer or to a FTP server.	
	• For Computer: Windows login name that you have specified in the procedure 1.	
	For Server: Contact the system administrator.	
(7) Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.	
	• For Computer: Empty password is not valid in the Network (Computer) feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)	
	For Server: Contact the system administrator.	
(8) Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.	
(9) Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for Computer and 21 for FTP server.	
	Available ports are: For Computer: 139, 445, 5000 - 65535 For Server: 21, 5000 - 65535	

Sending the Scanned File on the Network

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

 \bigcirc R

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Scan to Network.
- 4 Tap and select the desired address. When you cannot find the address, tap Address Book and select the desired address.
- 5 Tap and specify scan settings such as Output Color, Resolution, File Format, 2-Sided Scanning, Darken/Lighten, Contrast, Sharpness, Auto Exposure, Original Size, Margin, and File Naming Mode. For details, see "Scan Settings."
- **6** Tap Scan to begin sending the scanned file.

Scanning to a USB Memory

The Scan to USB feature allows you to store scanned image directly to a USB memory attached to the printer without using software.

Types of a USB Memory

You can use a USB memory with the following interfaces:

- USB 1.1
- USB 2.0

The USB memory must be formatted in FAT file systems (FAT16, FAT32, or VFAT) before inserting the memory device into the front USB port of the printer.



NOTE: If the USB memory is formatted in a file system other than above, the printer may not recognize that the USB memory is



NOTE: A USB memory with authentication feature and some brands of USB memories cannot be used with this printer.

Procedures

To store the scanned images to a USB memory:



NOTE: If you insert a USB memory to the front USB port first, the USB Drive Detected screen may appear. In this case, select Scan to USB, and proceed to step 6.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Insert a USB memory into the front USB port of the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.
- 4 Tap Scan to USB.
- 5 Tap and specify scan settings such as Output Color, Resolution, File Format, 2-Sided Scanning, Darken/Lighten, Contrast, Sharpness, Auto Exposure, Original Size, Margin, and File Naming Mode. For details, see "Scan Settings."

You can also specify the folder to save the scanned image. For details, see "Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image."

- **6** Tap Scan to begin scanning the document.
- 7 Remove the USB memory from the printer. See "Inserting and Removing a USB Memory" for more details.

Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a folder in the USB memory, specify the folder before executing the scan job.

- 1 If a folder has already existed in the USB memory, the folder name appears on the display.
- **2** Select a folder to save the scanned image.
 - **NOTE:** The default saving location is the root directory of the USB memory.
 - **NOTE:** You cannot directly enter a folder path using the numeric keypad.
 - NOTE: You can select any folder in the USB memory but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the memory to the printer.

If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generate a new file name to save the data.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image

You can send the scanned image as an e-mail attachment using the **Scan to E-mail** function. To send an e-mail, an e-mail account is necessary such as the corporate mail account or the internet service provider's mail account. Gmail™ account can be used as well.

To send an e-mail from your printer, the following information is necessary:

- "Preparing the Printer to Send the E-Mail"
- "Setting the DNS Server Address"
- "Setting the Administrator's E-mail Address"
- "Setting the Information Necessary to Access the Mail Server"

Preparing the Printer to Send the E-Mail

To send an e-mail from your printer, the following information is necessary:

- E-mail account (user account) information
- E-mail sever information
- **NOTE:** For information of your e-mail account or the mail server, consult your network administrator or your internet service provider.
- **NOTE:** When the printer is connected to the network which is using a proxy server, the printer may not be able to send the e-mail. In this case, consult your network administrator.
- **NOTE:** The preparations described below are effective while the e-mail account information is valid. You do not have to repeat the settings whenever you send the e-mail.

Setting the DNS Server Address

To set the DNS server address to your printer, follow the steps below:

- 1 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser. See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- **2** Click Print Server Settings.
- 3 Click TCP/IP.
- 4 If you are using DHCP for TCP/IP setting for the printer:

Set Get DNS Server Address from DHCP to Enable.

If you are setting TCP/IP manually:

Set Manual DNS Server Address.

5 Click Apply New Settings.

Setting the Administrator's E-mail Address

To make the printer to set an administrator's e-mail address, follow the steps below:

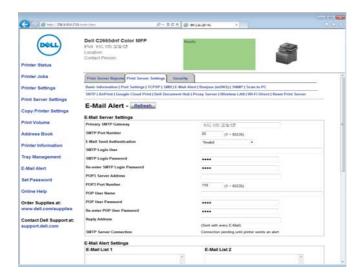
- 1 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Open the web browser.
 - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser. See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Click Print Server Settings.

- 3 Click Basic Information.
- **4** Set Administrator E-Mail Address. In the Administrator E-Mail Address text box. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used.
- **5** Click Apply New Settings.

Setting the Information Necessary to Access the Mail Server

To make the printer to send an e-mail, follow the steps below:

- 1 Launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - b Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser. See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."
- 2 Click E-Mail Alert.
- **3** Set the mail server information under E-Mail Server Settings.
 - **NOTE:** In this procedure, the server settings for a Gmail account are used as an example. The server settings will differ for each e-mail service.
 - **NOTE:** Information about the Gmail account is based on the information as of October 2013. For the latest information, visit the homepage of Gmail.



a In the Primary SMTP Gateway text box, set the primary SMTP gateway.

For example: smtp.gmail.com

b In the SMTP Port Number text box, enter the SMTP port number. This must be 25,587 or between 5,000 and 65,535.

For example: 587

- c In the E-Mail Send Authentication drop-down menu, specify the authentication method for outgoing e-mail. For example: SMTP Auth (Auto)
- **d** In the SMTP Login User text box, set the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.

For example: aaaa@gmail.com

In the SMTP Login Password text box, set the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric

For example: (your Gmail account password)

In the Re-enter SMTP Login Password text box, enter the login password again to confirm it.

For example: (your Gmail account password)

- In the POP3 Server Address text box, enter the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.*1
- In the POP3 Port Number text box, enter the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5,000 and 65,535.*1
- In the POP User Name text box, set the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas. "
- In the POP User Password text box, enter the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.*1
- In the Re-enter POP User Password text box, enter the POP user password again to confirm it. *1
- In the Reply Address text box, enter the reply e-mail address sent with each E-Mail Alert.
 - *1 Required to enter if you select POP before SMTP (Plain) or POP before SMTP (APOP) for E-Mail Send Authentication.
- 4 Click Apply New Settings.

If SMTP authentication is selected for E-Mail Send Authentication and if SSL/TLS encryption is used to communicate with the SMTP sever, the SSL/TLS type must be set in SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication of SSL/TLS under the Security tab. Proceed to step 5.

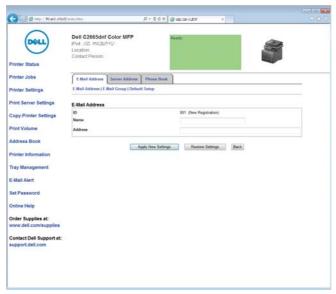
If SSL/TLS is not used or if "Invalid", "POP before SMTP (Plain)", or "POP before SMTP (APOP)" is selected for E-Mail Send Authentication, the mail server settings are complete.

- NOTE: To send an e-mail through Gmail, set the SSL/TLS type should be set to STARTTLS in SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication of SSL/TLS under the Security tab.
- **5** Click Security tab.
- 6 Select SSL/TLS.
- **7** Select a SSL/TLS type from the SMTP-SSL/TLS Communication list.
 - **NOTE**: To use a Gmail account, select **STARTTLS**.
- 8 Click Apply New Settings.

Registering a New E-Mail Address to Address Book

- 1 From the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, click Address Book, and then click the E-Mail Address tab.
- 2 Click Create.

The E-Mail Address page for registering a new e-mail address appears.



- **3** Enter the following:
 - Name
 - Address
- 4 Click Apply New Settings.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Scan to E-mail.
- **3** Specify a recipient from the following:

Enter Recipient's Address: Enter an e-mail address directly.

Sender: Select from the following types of selecting sender's e-mail address:

- Keyboard: Select an e-mail address from using keyboard.
- Address Book: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- Network Address Book: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Address Book: Select from the following types of address books:

- Individuals: Select an e-mail address registered in the address book.
- Groups: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- Network Address Book: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Tap + and the recipient you specified from Enter Recipient's Address to remove or edit the recipient.

Tap + and the recipient you specified from Address Book to remove or see details of the recipient. You can also change the e-mail to Bcc.

- **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."
- **NOTE:** For details about Network Address Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."
- **NOTE:** The e-mail addresses needs to be registered before you can select Address Book.
- 4 Tap 🗖 and specify scan settings such as Output Color, Resolution, File Format, 2-Sided Scanning, Darken/Lighten, Contrast, Sharpness, Auto Exposure, Original Size, Margin, and File Naming Mode. For details, see "Scan Settings."
- 5 Tap Send to begin sending e-mail.

Faxing



NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function. If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to Off, the fax function is disabled and the menu is also disabled on the touch panel. For details, see "Function Enabled."



NOTE: If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Settings menu.

Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Dell Printer Setup

You can specify the country, line type, tone/pulse, receive mode, DRPD pattern, fax header name, and fax number.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** file launches automatically.
- 2 Click Configure Printer on the Dell Printer Setup window. The Configure Printer window appears.



- **3** Click Fax Configuration.
- **4** Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Available settings are:

- Country
- Line Type
- Tone/Pulse
- Receive Mode
 - (This setting is available only when a distinctive ring service is installed on your telephone line by your telephone company.)
- FAX Header Name
- FAX Number
- **NOTE:** To make initial settings from the printer operator panel, see "Setting Your Country."

Setting Your Country

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Fax Line Settings.
- 5 Tap Country.
- **6** Select the country where the printer is used, and then tap OK.

The printer must be rebooted after you set the country settings. When a screen prompting you to reboot the printer, tap Yes. After the reboot, the **Home** screen is displayed on the touch panel.

NOTE: When you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the printer, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Fax Line Settings.
- 5 Tap Fax Number.
- 6 Enter your fax number using the number pad, and then tap OK.
 - **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the 🔹 button to delete the last digit.
- 7 Tap Fax Header Name.
- 8 Enter your name or company name using the keyboard, and then tap OK.

 For details on how to use the keyboard to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Touch Panel."

Setting the Time and Date

NOTE: It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap System Settings.
- 4 Tap General.
- 5 Tap Date & Time.
- 6 Tap Time Zone.
- 7 Tap v until the desired geographic region appears, and then select that region.
- **8** Tap until the desired time zone appears, and then select that time zone.
- **9** Tap OK.
- 10 Tap Date.

- 11 Tap or + or enter the date using the number pad, and then tap OK.
- 12 Tap Time.
- **13** Enter the time using the number pad.
- **14** Tap OK.
 - **NOTE:** The printer beeps and does not allow you to proceed to the next step if a wrong number is entered.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap System Settings.
- 4 Tap General.
- 5 Tap Date & Time.
- 6 Tap Time.
- 7 Tap 12 Hour or 24 Hour, and then tap OK.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Fax Line Settings.
- **5** Tap until Line Monitor appears, and then tap Line Monitor.
- **6** Select the desired volume, and then tap OK.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Ringer Volume

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- **3** Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Incoming Defaults.
- 5 Tap Ring Tone Volume.
- **6** Select the desired volume, and then tap OK.
- 7 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Specifying the Fax Settings Options

Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.

- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Select the desired menu.
- Select the desired setting or enter a value.To enter a value, tap or +, or use the number pad or the keyboard.
- **6** Tap OK. If necessary , repeat steps 4 through 6.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option		Description
Fax Line Settings	Fax Number	Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set Fax Header to On. The number specified in Fax Number is used in the printer ID.
	Country	You can select the country where the printer is used.
		You can change this setting when:
		 No jobs in operation
		 No fax jobs waiting in the memory
	Fax Header Name	Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
	Line Type	You can select the default line type. • PSTN • PBX
	Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	DRPD Pattern	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Option			Description
Incoming Defaults	Receive Mode		You can select the default fax receiving mode. • Telephone (manual receive mode): Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, o by tapping Manual Receive in On Hook and then tapping Receive. For details about Manual Receive, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode." • Fax: (automatic receive mode) • Telephone / Fax: When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Rec Fax/Tel, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
			 Ans Machine/Fax: The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fa signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (sucl as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported. DRPD: Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on you telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
	Ring Tone Volume		Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone / Fax.
	Auto Receive Setup	Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.
		Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.
		Auto Receive Ans/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.
	Junk Fax Setup		You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system onl accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes.
			Tap Off to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax. Tap On to turn the feature on.

Option			Description
	Sent Fax Forward		You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number, or forward them to an e-mail address. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer dials the fax number you have specified in Forwarding Number or sends an e-mail to the address you have specified in Forwarding E-mail Address 1-5.
			To forward to a fax number, you need to register a fax number on Forwarding Number. To forward to an e-mail address, you need to register information on E-mail Alert and Forwarding E-mail Address. For information on e-mail alert, see "E-Mail Alert" and on forwarding number and e-mail address, see "Fax Settings."
			Tap Off not to forward incoming faxes.
			Tap Forward to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax.
			Tap Print and Forward to forward and print incoming faxes.
			Tap $\ensuremath{\operatorname{\textbf{Print}}}$ and $\ensuremath{\operatorname{\textbf{E-mail}}}$ to print and forward incoming faxes to e-mail.
			Tap Forward to Server to forward incoming faxes to server.
			Tap Print and Forward to Server to print and forward incoming faxes to server.
	2 Sided Print		You can set whether to make duplex print when you print faxes.
			Tap Off to print faxes on one side of a sheet of paper.
			Tap On to print faxes on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Remote Receive		You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone. When you set Remote receive to On, specify a two digit remote receive code in Remote Receive Tone.
	Discard Size		When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and Discard Size is set to Auto Reduction, the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If Discard Size is set to other than Auto Reduction, the data within the margin will be discarded.
Transmission Defaults	Auto Redial Setup	Redial Attempts	You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 13. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
		Interval of Redial	Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1–15 minutes can be entered.
		Resend Delay	You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.

Option		Description	
	Tone/Pulse	You can select the dialing type.	
		• Tone	
		• Pulse(10PPS)	
		• Pulse(20PPS)	
	Prefix Dial	You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number. When you set Prefix Dial to On, the number set in Prefix Dial Number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX). You can set a prefix dial number of up to five digits.	
	Fax Cover Page	You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.	
	Fax Header	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.	
		Tap Off to turn this feature off.	
		Tap On to turn this feature on.	
		Note that if United States is selected for the setting of Country, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to On and cannot be changed.	
		For information on the country setting, see "Setting Your Country."	
	ECM	You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).	
	Modem Speed	You can set the modem speed.	
	Display Manual Fax Recipients	You can set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the Sending Fax screen when manually sending a fax.	
Fax Reports	Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.	
	Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.	
	Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple locations.	
	Fax Protocol	You can set whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.	



NOTE: Prefix Dial supports only the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- **2** Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Fax Line Settings.
- 5 Tap Line Type.
- 6 Tap PBX, and then OK.
- 7 Tap Transmission Defaults.
- 8 Tap Prefix Dial.
- **9** Tap On.

- Enter a prefix number using the number pad, and then tap OK. The characters you can use for a prefix number are 0–9, *, and #. The maximum number of characters for a prefix number is five.
- 11 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Advanced Fax Settings

NOTE: The advanced fax settings are only meant for advanced users. Incorrect settings may damage the printer.

If you are experiencing fax send or receive errors, there is an advanced fax settings menu which you can access and change the settings accordingly.

To enter the Diagnostic Menu (Customer Mode), follow the instructions.

- **1** Turn off the printer.
- 2 Disconnect all network, phone line, and USB cables from the printer.
- **3** Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode. After all the advanced fax settings have been made, you will need to turn off and on the printer for the new settings to be effective.

Fax Data Encoding Method

Some of the legacy fax devices do not support the Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) data encoding method. You may experience fax send or receive errors due to this data encoding method. You can disable the JBIG and select the Modified Huffman (MH), Modified Read (MR), or Modified Modified Read (MMR) encoding with the following instructions.

You can change the modem transmission encoding with the following instructions.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Tap button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.
- 3 Tap U button until Parameter appears, and then tap OK.
- 4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then tap OK.
- 5 Tap ↓ button until G3M TX Coding appears, and then tap OK.
- **6** Tap **1** button until the desired encoding appears, and then tap OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.

You can change the modem receive encoding with the following instructions.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Tap | | button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.
- **3** Tap | button until Parameter appears, and then tap OK.
- 4 Ensure that FAX Parameter appears, and then tap OK.
- **5** Tap | button until G3M RX Coding appears, and then tap OK.
- **6** Tap button until the desired encoding appears, and then tap OK.

You can select MH, MR, or MMR.

Diagnosing the Fax Connection

You can diagnose the Fax connection using the FAX Line Diagnosis feature that can detect the abnormalities of telephone line connection.

- 1 Turn on the printer while holding down the 8 and 2 buttons on the number pad to start in Customer Mode.
- 2 Tap | button to tap Fax/Scanner Diag, and then tap OK.

- 3 Tap button until FAX Test appears, and then tap OK.
- 4 When the message Check FAX Connection appears, tap OK.
- **5** When the message Ready to Start appears, tap OK to start diagnosing the FAX connection. One of the following diagnosing result is displayed.

Diagnosing result	Description	
Connection not Detected	The telephone line cord is not connected. Make sure that the	
Please Reconnect Telephone Line	telephone line cord is securely connected.	
Cable Connected Wrongly	The telephone line cord is connected to the wrong connector. Make	
Reconnect Telephone Line from Wall Jack to Line Connection	sure that the telephone line cord is connected at one end to the wall jack connector (\Box) of your printer and at the other end to an active wall jack. If you use a telephone or answering machine, connect to the phone connector (\Box) .	
Fax Connection OK	The telephone line cord is properly connected. Check the Tone/Pulse	
Please Check Setting of Tone/Pulse in Admin Menu after Restart Printer	setting. For information on Tone/Pulse setting, see "Available Fax Settings Options."	

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft[®] Windows[®] operating system.

Loading an Original Document

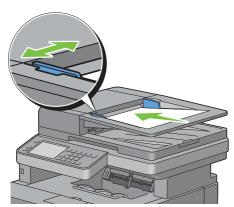
You can use the DADF or the document glass to load an original document for faxing. Using the DADF, you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper at a time. Using the document glass, you can load one sheet at a time.



NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

To fax a document using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF):

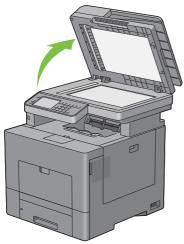
Place the document(s) facing up on the DADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



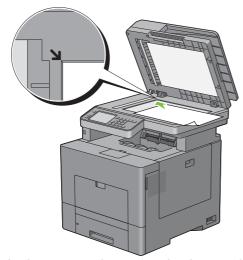
2 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")

To fax a document from the document glass:

1 Open the document cover.



2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



- 3 Adjust the document resolution. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution.")
- 4 Close the document cover.
 - **NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the DADF. If any document is detected in the DADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
 - **NOTE**: If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Adjusting the Document Resolution

You can improve the quality of the fax document by adjusting the resolution, especially for documents with low image quality or documents containing photographic images.

- 1 Press the 🏠 (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Fax.

- 3 Tap 👸 .
- 4 Tap Resolution.
- **5** Tap the desired setting.

Standard*	Used for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Used for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Used for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.
Photo	Used for documents containing photographic images.

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.



NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine resolution transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Adjusting the Document Contrast

You can adjust the contrast of the fax document to be lighter or darker than the original.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Tap 🗖 .
- 5 Tap Darken/Lighten.
- 6 Drag the desired level on the Darken/Lighten bar, and then tap OK.

You can select a contrast level from seven levels between Darken and Lighten.

Drag the indicator on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast darker.

Darken 3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken 2	
Darken 1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten l	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten 2	
Lighten 3	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Sending a Fax From Memory

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- **2** Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- **5** To select a fax number, do one of the followings:
 - Tap Phone Book, and then select one of the following:

Individuals: Select an individual fax number and then tap Done.

Groups: Select a group dial number and then tap Done.

Network Phone Book: Search and select a fax number from the LDAP server and then tap Search.

- **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."
- NOTE: For details about Network Phone Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."
- **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select Address Book.
- Tap Speed Dial.

Enter the speed dial number using the number pad, and then tap Done.

6 Tap Send to scan data.

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap Continue.

When you have finished loading documents, tap Send Now.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sends the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

- **NOTE:** You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by tapping Stop.
- NOTE: Tapping Send does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax function is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

Sending a Fax Manually

Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 5 Tap On Hook.
- **6** Enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")

7 Tap Send to begin sending the fax.

NOTE: You can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax by tapping Stop.

NOTE: Tapping Send does not start sending a fax when the available time is set or the Fax function is locked. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.

If you receive an error message, press Close to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For further details, see "Printing a Report."

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options."



NOTE: The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- **2** Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 5 Tap , and then tap Delayed Send.
- 6 Tap On.
- 7 Enter the start time using or +, and then tap OK.
- 8 Tap Back, and then enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book. (For details, see "Automatic Redialing.")

9 Tap Send to scan data.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is



NOTE: If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.



NOTE: If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax function, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the Fax function.)

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

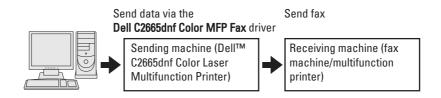


NOTE: Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.



NOTE: If the specified start time overlaps with the time periods for the available time or the Fax function, the printer cannot send the delayed fax at the specified time. (For details, see "Set Available Time" for the Available time and "Function Enabled" for the

Example



Procedure



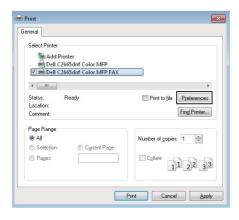
NOTE: The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.



NOTE: To use this feature, you must install the fax driver. (For details, see "Inserting the Software and Documentation Disc" for Windows or "Installing the Drivers and Software" for Macintosh.)

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select Dell C2665dnf Color MFP Fax.
- **3** Click **Preferences** in Windows, or select **FAX Setting** in Macintosh.

For Microsoft Windows:

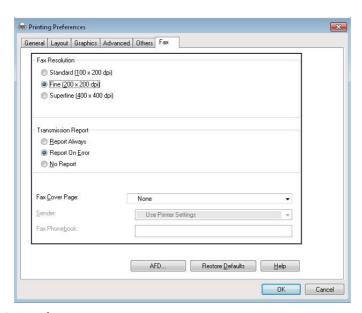


For Apple Macintosh:

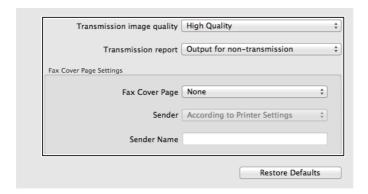


- 4 When the setting dialog box appears, specify the following settings.
 - **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



a. Transmission image quality

Purpose:

To set the output quality.

Values:

Standard	For documents with normal sized characters.	
High Quality*	For documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.	
Super-high image quality	For documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports Super Fine resolution. See the notes below.	

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.



NOTE: Faxes printed in the Super-high image quality by Direct Fax driver transmits at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

b. Transmission report

Purpose:

To specify whether to print a fax transmission result.

Values:

Output regularly	Prints a transmission result after every fax transmission.
Output for non-transmission*	Prints a transmission result only when an error occurs.
Do not output	Does not print fax transmission results.

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

c. Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To specify whether to attach a cover page to your fax.

Values:

According to Printer Settings	Determines whether to attach a cover page to your fax depending on the setting you specify in Fax Cover Page on the operator panel.
Attach	Attaches a cover page to your fax.
None*	Does not attach a cover page to your fax.

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender

Purpose:

To specify whether to print the sender's name on the fax cover page.

Values:

According to Printer Settings*	Determines whether or not to print the sender's name on the fax cover page based on the printer settings.
Enter a sender name	Allows you to enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page in Sender Name .

^{*} Denotes the factory default setting.

Sender Name

Purpose:

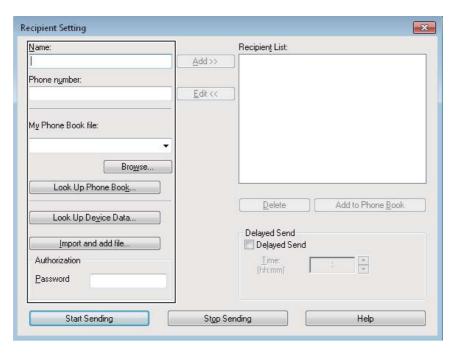
To enter a sender's name that will be printed on the fax cover page.

The sender's name can be up to 30 characters. If it exceeds 30 characters, only the first 30 characters will be printed.

5 For Windows, click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, and then click **Print**. For Macintosh, click **Print**.

The Set/Check Fax Transmission dialog box appears.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



- Enter the destination for the recipient. The following procedure is for entering the destination. For details on how to enter the destination, please refer to the Help file for the driver.
 - Enter the name and fax number directly.
 - Select a fax number from a phone book.
 - Look Up Phone Book: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the file specified for My Phone Book file.
 - Look Up Device Data: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the Phone Book on the Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer.
 - Import and add file (Windows only): Allows you to select a source file such as a CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, or a LDAP server. (For details on LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "Fax Server Phone Book.")
 - NOTE: Depending on the application (when you are using Mac OS X 10.7 or later), you cannot use Look Up Device Data
 - NOTE: Enter the password in the Password field in the Authorization area before sending a fax if the fax function is locked with a password.
 - NOTE: If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function.

To lock the fax function with a password:

- NOTE: To lock the fax function from Function Enabled, you must first set Panel Lock to On. For details, see "Panel Lock."
- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- **3** Tap **▼** until Secure Settings appears, and then tap Secure Settings.
- 4 Tap Function Enabled.
- 5 Tap Fax.
- 6 Tap On (Password).
- 7 Enter a four digit password, and then tap OK.
- **8** Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To check whether the fax has been sent:

Print a job history report. For details about how to print a job history report, see "Report / List."

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes



NOTE: To use the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax, connect an answering machine to the phone connector (on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the Telephone mode.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-sized, A4-sized, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media." For details about setting the paper type and size in the tray, see "Print Media Guidelines."

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the Fax mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options"). You can also receive a fax by tapping Manual Receive in On Hook.

To receive a fax by tapping Manual Receive:

- 1 When the external telephone rings, pick up the handset and check for the fax tone.
- **2** After you hear the fax tone, press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Tap On Hook.
- 5 Tap Receive.
- **6** Hang up the hand set of the external telephone.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax

To use the Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax mode, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector (on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

For details on Telephone / Fax or Ans Machine/Fax mode, see "Available Fax Settings Options."



NOTE: If you have set your printer to Ans Machine/Fax and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the Fax mode after a predefined time.

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone (Remote Receive)

You can manually receive a fax from the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

To manually receive a fax using the external telephone, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector (on the back of your printer and also set Remote Receive to On.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear a fax tone, enter the two-digit code from the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

When entering the remote receive code from the external telephone, press the number keys slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try entering the two-digit code once again.

The default remote receive code is 00. You can change the two-digit code to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options."



NOTE: Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD

The DRPD is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- **2** Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Fax Line Settings.
- 5 Tap ▼ until DRPD Pattern appears, and then tap DRPD Pattern.
- **6** Tap the desired pattern, and then tap OK.
- **7** Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD. For details, see "Available Fax Settings Options."

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Fax.
- 3 Tap On Hook.
- 4 Tap Polling.
- **5** Enter the fax number of the remote machine using the number pad.
- 6 Tap Receive to begin receiving the fax.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (001–200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Setting Speed Dial

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Phone Book.
- 4 Tap Individuals.
- 5 Tap v until the desired speed dial number between 1 and 200 appears and then select that number. To jump to a specific speed dial number, enter the desired number and then # using the number pad.
- 6 Tap the Enter Name text box.
- 7 Enter the name, and then tap OK.
- 8 Tap the Enter Number text box.
- **9** Enter the fax number using the number pad, and then tap OK.

To insert a pause between numbers, press the (Redial/Pause) button.

- "-" appears on the display.
- **10** Tap OK.

To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.

Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- 2 Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Tap Speed Dial.
- 5 Enter the speed dial number between 1 and 200 using the number pad, and then tap Done.
- 6 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. (For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution." For adjusting the contrast, see "Adjusting the Document Contrast.")
- 7 Tap Send to scan data.

When the document is loaded on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page.

If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then tap Continue.

When you have finished loading documents, tap Send Now.

The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.



NOTE: Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.



NOTE: You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Phone Book.
- 4 Tap Groups.
- 5 Tap vuntil the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 appears and then select that group dial number. If a speed dial number is already stored in the location you chose, the display shows the name and the number of entries stored in that group dial number.
- 6 Tap the Enter Group Name text box.
- 7 Enter the name, and then tap OK.
- 8 Tap Add from Address Book.
 - **NOTE:** The fax number needs to be registered before you can select Add from Address Book.
- **9** Tap v until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
- **10** Tap OK.

To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- **1** Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Phone Book.
- 4 Tap Groups.
- 5 Tap vuntil the group dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that group dial number.
- 6 Tap Edit.
- 7 Tap the Enter Group Name text box.
- **8** Enter a new name, and then tap OK.
- **9** To delete a speed dial number from the group dial number:
 - Tap <u>until</u> until the speed dial number that you want to edit appears, and then select that speed dial number.
 - Tap Remove.
- **10** To add a new speed dial number to the group dial number:
 - Tap Add from Address Book.
 - Tap until the desired speed dial number appears and then select that speed dial number.
 - Tap OK.

11 Tap OK.

To delete an existing group dial number, select the group dial number, and then tap Remove.

If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 11.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dial (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for Broadcasting or Delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation. (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings Options.")

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the DADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing a Speed Dial List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Speed Dial list.

For details about how to print a Speed Dial list, see "Report / List."

Phone Book

You can select or search the registered phone numbers from the phone books.

1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document."

- **2** Press the (Home) button.
- 3 Tap Fax.
- 4 Tap Phone Book, and then select one of the following:

To select from the local phone book:

- a Tap Individuals or Groups.
- **b** Swipe the screen until the desired speed dial number or the group dial number appears, and then select that speed dial number or group dial number.
- c Tap Done.

To search from the server phone book:

- a Tap Network Phone Book.
- **b** Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap Search.
- **c** Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap Done.
- **NOTE:** For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Books."
- **NOTE:** For details about Network Phone Book, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."
- **NOTE:** A fax number needs to be registered before you can select an address book.
- 5 Tap Send to begin sending the fax.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the Secure Receive option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode is turned off, all stored faxes will be printed.

NOTE: Before operation, ensure Panel Lock is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the (i) (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Admin Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Settings.
- 4 Tap Incoming Defaults.
- **5** Tap **until** Secure Receive appears, and then tap Secure Receive.
- 6 Tap Secure Receive Set.
- 7 Tap Enable.
- **8** Enter a four digit password, and then tap OK.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and Secure Fax Receive is enabled on the Job Status screen to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

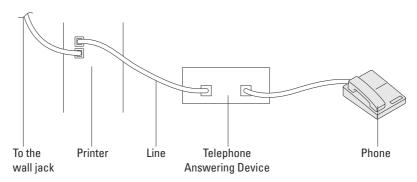
- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Print.
- 3 Swipe the screen until Secure Fax Receive appears, and then tap Secure Fax Receive.
- **4** Enter a four digit password, and then tap OK.

The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Follow the same steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" and tap Secure Receive Set.
- 2 Tap Disable.

Using an Answering Machine



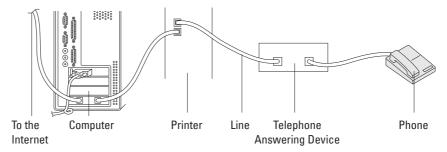
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the Ans Machine/Fax and set Auto Receive Ans/Fax to specify the time for the TAD
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the Fax after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you
 Set On Hook to On (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then tap Receive and hang up the receiver.

OR

Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the Ans Machine/Fax and set Auto Receive Ans/Fax to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

NOTE: For more information about other reports and how to print a report, see "Report / List."

Speed Dial	This list shows all the numbers currently stored in the memory of your printer as speed dial numbers.
Address Book	This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the printer's memory as Address Book information.
Server Address	This list shows all of the numbers currently stored in the printer's memory as Server Address information.
Fax Activity	This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.
Fax Pending	This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.
Print Meter	This report shows the total number of pages printed. The report will be titled ColorTrack Report.

Changing Setting Options

- **1** Press the (Information) button.
- 2 Tap the Tools tab, and then tap Default Settings.
- 3 Tap Fax Defaults.
- 4 Select the desired menu.
- **5** Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then tap OK.

Dell™ Document Hub

The Dell Document Hub is a convenient one-stop gateway to a variety of cloud services to help you manage your documents. With the Dell Document Hub, you can convert hard copy documents into editable digital content and store them directly in your preferred cloud storage service. You can search for files across multiple clouds simultaneously and then share and print content easily.



Registering the User and Signing In to the Dell Document Hub

To use the Dell Document Hub, you need a user account registered to the printer, and sign in to the Dell Document Hub.

Registering a New User to the Dell Document Hub

Prepare the access information required for each of the cloud services you want to use, and make sure that you have a user account registered to the printer. For more information on registering an account, see "Creating a New User Account."

- 1 Access the Dell Document Hub website from your computer.
 - Enter the following URL in the web browser:
 - www.dell.com/dochub
- **2** Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.
- An e-mail will be soon sent to the registered e-mail address. Check the e-mail and follow the instructions on the email to activate.

To Register a New User From the Printer

You can start the user registration alternatively using the printer.



NOTE: To complete the registration process, you will need to use your computer or mobile device to receive an e-mail and access the Dell Document Hub website.

- 1 Log in to the printer as a registered user.
- 2 Tap the Dell Document Hub tile in the Home screen.
- 3 Tap New User.
 - The Welcome to Dell Document Hub screen is displayed. Tap Next.
- **4** Follow the instructions displayed in the touch panel.

Signing In to the Dell Document Hub

- 1 Log in to the printer as a registered user.
- 2 Tap the Dell Document Hub tile in the Home screen.

The Dell Doc Hub Sign In screen is displayed.



- **3** Tap the E-mail text box to enter the e-mail address.
 - NOTE: You can also tap () to select a recently entered e-mail address from a list. The list can contain up to eight recently entered e-mail addresses.
- 4 Tap the Password text box to enter the password, and tap Done.
- 5 If you want to save your e-mail address and password, tap to check the Save E-mail & Password check box. The e-mail and password are stored under the registered user's account and unauthorized user will not be able to access them. For security purpose, it is recommended that you set a password for registered user.
- 6 Tap Sign in. When the **Dell Document Hub** screen is displayed, signing in is successful.
- NOTE: If all the tiles on the Dell Document Hub screen are pale and disabled when you sign in, you have not completed the necessary procedures to activate your account of the Dell Document Hub. Check the e-mail you received from the Dell Document Hub, and activate your account.

When the Favorites Screen is Displayed When You Tap the Tile on the Dell Document Hub Screen

This means that your favorite settings for the function have been saved on the printer. Select settings from the list as desired.

Returning to the Home Screen

Tap Exit. The sign-in status is maintained. Next time you tap the Dell Document Hub tile on the Home screen, you do not have to sign in while you are logged in to the Home screen.

You can tap Sign out as well to return to the Home screen, but the sign-in status is not maintained. Next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub, you need to reenter your e-mail address and password.

Logging Out From the Printer

Press the **TO** (Login/Logout) button. You will log out from the Home screen and the portal screen will be displayed. In this case, the sign-in status to the Dell Document Hub is maintained as far as the Save E-mail & Password check box option is selected in the step 5 above. Next time you tap the Dell Document Hub tile on the Home screen, you can skip the sign in process.

Searching for and Printing Files

You can search for the files saved in the cloud services, and print them from the printer. You can search across multiple cloud services at once. This method is suitable when you want to search by the keywords, including the file name.

- NOTE: To search for files across multiple cloud services, you need to go to dell.com/dochub and connect the cloud services with the Dell Document Hub.
- 1 Tap the Search for Files tile in the Dell Document Hub screen.
- 2 Enter the keywords, and tap Search.

You can use wildcard characters for searching if the cloud service accepts them.



Files are searched across the cloud services you registered.

The Search Results screen is displayed.

- **3** Tap the files you want to print. You can select up to 10 files.
 - To sort the results, tap $\stackrel{A}{\sim}$ and select the sorting order.
- **4** Tap **to preview the selected files.**

The File Preview screen is displayed. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

- To show the page in the large preview, tap the page in the small previews.
- To preview other files, flick the screen side to side.
- To specify the file as the one to be printed, tap the rectangle beside the small previews to enter a check mark.
- To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
- **5** Tap **t** to check or change the print settings.

The Print Settings screen is displayed.

- To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.
- To return to the previous screen, tap Back. For more information on the Print Settings, see "Print Settings."
- **6** Tap Print to start printing.

To cancel printing, tap Stop.

When all the selected files are printed, the screen returns to the Search Results screen.

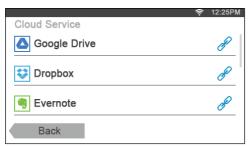
NOTE: You can start printing by tapping Print in any screens of **Search Results**, File Preview or Print Settings.

Browsing and Printing Files

You can browse and print the files saved in the selected cloud services. This method is suitable when you know which cloud service the file you want to print is located in.

Tap the Browse for Files tile in the Dell Document Hub screen.

The Cloud Services screen is displayed.



To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

- # indicates that the cloud service is correctly associated with the Dell Document Hub.
- indicates that the cloud service is not associated, or not linked correctly.
- indicates that the cloud service link with the Dell Document Hub has expired.

To link the cloud service with the Dell Document Hub, go to dell.com/dochub.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the cloud service you want to browse in.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.



NOTE: If the cloud service you want to use is not associated or if the cloud service link with the Dell Document Hub has expired, you can try signing in to the cloud service directly from the printer using the one time sign in. Tap the cloud service you want to use, enter the account name or e-mail address and its password registered to the cloud service, and tap Login.



3 Tap the location you want to browse in.

The contents in the selected location are listed.

4 Tap the files you want to print. You can select up to 10 files.

- **5** Tap **Q** to search the files in the current location.
 - Enter the file name or keywords, and tap Search.

The Search Results screen is displayed.

You can sort the results by tapping $\stackrel{A}{\sim} \mathbb{I}$ and selecting the sorting order.

- **b** To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
- **6** Tap **5** to preview the selected files.

The File Preview screen is displayed. The first three pages of each file are displayed in the small previews.

- To show the page in the large preview, tap the page in the small previews.
- To preview other files, flick the screen side to side.
- **c** To specify the file as the one to be printed, tap the rectangle beside the small previews to enter a check mark.
- **d** To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
- 7 Tap to check or change the print settings.

The Print Settings screen is displayed.

- To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side
- To return to the previous screen, tap Back.

For more information on the Print Settings, see "Print Settings."

NOTE: Tap 🚃 in the Print Settings screen, and you can save your print settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the Save Favorites screen, and tap Save. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping 🔀 .

Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap Print to start printing.

To cancel printing, tap Stop.

When all the selected files are printed, the screen to show the selected location returns.

NOTE: You can start printing by tapping Print in any screens of contents list, Search Results, File Preview or Print Settings.

Searching for the Files in the Selected Cloud Service

After you select the cloud service in the step 2 above, you can search for the files by tapping Q.

Enter the file name or keywords, and tap Search.

You can select the files to print in the Search Results screen, sort the results by tapping $\frac{A}{2}$, or preview the files by tapping 🔯 .

Scanning

You can scan the document and save the scanned file in the cloud service.

1 Tap the Scan tile in the Dell Document Hub screen.

The Cloud Services screen is displayed.



To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the destination cloud service you want to save the scanned file to.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.



NOTE: If the cloud service you want to use is not associated or if the cloud service link with the Dell Document Hub has expired, you can try signing in to the cloud service directly from the printer using the one time sign in. Tap the cloud service you want to use, enter the account name or e-mail address and its password registered to the cloud service, and tap

3 Tap the location you want to save the scanned file to.

The screen to show the selected location is displayed.

4 Tap Next.

The screen to specify the file name and the file format is displayed.

- **5** Tap the File Name text box, and enter the file name.
- **6** Tap the File Format box, and specify the file format to save the scanned file.
- **7** Tap **(a)** to check or change the scan settings.

The Scan Settings screen is displayed.

- To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.
- To return to the previous screen, tap Back.

For more information on the Scan Settings, see "Scan" and "Scan Settings."



NOTE: Tap 🔚 in the Scan Settings screen, and you can save your scan settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the Save Favorites screen, and tap Save. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by

Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap Scan to start scanning.

To cancel scanning, tap Stop.

When the scanning is completed, the screen to show the selected location returns.

Searching for the Location Across the Cloud Services

Before you select the cloud service in the step 2 above, you can search for the location you want to save the scanned file across the cloud services by tapping \mathbb{Q} .

Enter the keywords, and tap Search.

You can select the location to save the scanned file in the Search Results screen.

You can sort the results by tapping $\stackrel{A}{\sim}$.

Searching for the Location in the Selected Cloud Service

Before you select the location in the step 3 above, you can search for the location in the selected cloud service by tapping \mathbf{Q} .

Enter the keywords, and tap Search.

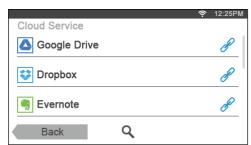
You can select the location to save the scanned file in the Search Results screen.

You can sort the results by tapping $\stackrel{A}{\sim} \blacksquare$.

Scanning the Document Using Optical Character Recognition (OCR)

You can scan the document using OCR, and save it in the cloud service.

1 Tap the Smart OCR Scan tile in the Dell Document Hub screen. The Cloud Services screen is displayed.



To scroll the list, flick the screen up or down.

The status of the cloud services can be confirmed by an icon on the right side of the names of each cloud service.

For more information, tap the status icon.

2 Tap the destination cloud service you want to save the converted file to.

The list of the contents stored in the selected cloud service is displayed.



NOTE: If the cloud service you want to use is not associated or if the cloud service link with the Dell Document Hub has expired, you can try signing in to the cloud service directly from the printer using the one time sign in. Tap the cloud service you want to use, enter the account name or e-mail address and its password registered to the cloud service, and tap Login.

3 Tap the location you want to save the converted file to.

The screen to show the selected location is displayed.

4 Tap Next.

The screen to specify the file name and the file format is displayed.

- **5** Tap the File Name text box, and enter the file name.
- **6** Tap the File Format box, and specify the file format to save the converted file.

7 Tap **o** to check or change the OCR scan settings.

The Scan Settings screen is displayed.

- **a** To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.
- b To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
 For more information on the Scan Settings, see "Smart OCR Scan" and "Scan Settings."
- NOTE: Tap in the Scan Settings screen, and you can save your scan settings and file path to the cloud service as a favorite. Name your favorite in the Save Favorites screen, and tap Save. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings and the file path will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping .

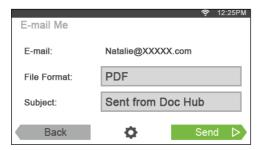
Once you save your settings as a favorite in the **Favorites** screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.

8 Tap Scan to start scanning using the OCR.

Receiving the Scanned File as an E-Mail

The document can be scanned and sent to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

1 Tap the E-mail Me tile in the Dell Document Hub screen.
The E-mail Me screen is displayed.



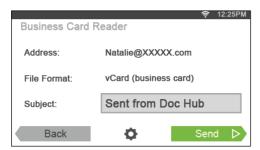
- **2** Tap the File Format box, and specify the file format to save the scanned file.
- 3 Tap the Subject text box, and enter the subject of the mail sent with the scanned file.
- **4** Tap **(a)** to check or change the e-mail settings.
 - **a** To show the other tiles, flick the screen side to side.
 - b To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
 For more information on the E-mail Settings, see "E-mail Me" and "Scan Settings."
 - NOTE: Tap in the E-mail Settings screen, and you can save your e-mail settings as a favorite. Name your favorite in the Save Favorites screen, and tap Save. If you are saving the favorite in the same name with the existing favorite, the settings will be overwritten. You can delete the unnecessary favorite by tapping .

 Once you save your settings as a favorite in the Favorites screen, you can recall those settings the next time you sign in to the Dell Document Hub from any printers of the same model.
- 5 Tap Send to start scanning and sending the scanned file as an attached file of an e-mail.

Receiving the Scanned Image of the Business Card as an E-Mail

The business card can be scanned and converted to the vCard file, and sent to you as an attached file of an e-mail.

1 Tap the Business Card Reader tile in the Dell Document Hub screen. The Business Card Reader screen is displayed.



- 2 Tap the Subject text box, and enter the subject of the e-mail sent with the vCard file.
- **3** Tap **()** to check or change the scan settings.
 - Tap the OCR Language tile to specify the language.
 - To return to the previous screen, tap Back.
- 4 Tap Send to start scanning and sending the vCard file as an attached file of an e-mail.

Know Your Printer

24 Understanding Your Printer Software	407
25 User Authentication	425
26 Multiple Desktop - Tile Customization	429
27 Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book 4	431
28 Using Digital Certificates	435
29 Understanding Fonts	445
30 Understanding Printer Messages	451
31 Specifications4	461

Understanding Your Printer Software

Use the Software and Documentation disc that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

Printer Status Window

The Printer Status window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the Printer Status window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the Printer Status window. You can set the Printer Status window to always launch when printing in Printing Status Window Properties.

You can also check toner level, quantity of paper remaining or the configuration of options for the printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the Status Monitor Console to manage multiple instances of the Status Window for a particular printer. Select a printer from the list view (or Printer Selection) by clicking its name to open a Status Window for a particular printer.

Dell™ Supplies Management System

You can launch the Dell Supplies Management System dialog box from the All Programs menu or the desktop icon. You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Additional Color Laser Software → Dell Supplies Management System.
 - The Dell Supplies Management System window appears.
- **2** Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
- **3** If you are ordering from the web:
 - **a** Select a URL from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
 - Click Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site.



4 If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order** by **Phone** section.

User Setup Disk Creating Tool

The User Setup Disk Creating Tool program located in the MakeDisk folder of the Utilities folder on the Software and Documentation disc and the printer drivers located on the Software and Documentation disc are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved printer driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the printer driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the printer driver.

- Install the printer driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

Software Update

The firmware and/or driver updates can be downloaded from the Dell Support web site located at dell.com/support.

Printer Utility Software

You can open the Status Window, Tool Box, Updater, Troubleshooting, Address Book Editor, and ScanButton Manager using the Quick Launch Utility window.

NOTE: Quick Launch Utility is only supported on Microsoft[®] Windows[®].

To use the Quick Launch Utility, select to install the Quick Launch Utility when you install the Dell software. To install the Dell software, follow the instructions below.

- 1 Insert the Software and Documentation disc into your computer and click setup assist.exe to start Dell Printer
- **2** Click Install Printer Driver and Software.
- **3** Follow the on-screen instructions.

To open the Quick Launch Utility window:

1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Additional Color Laser Software → Quick Launch Utility.



The Quick Launch Utility window provides six buttons: Status Window, Tool Box, Updater, Troubleshooting, Address Book Editor, and ScanButton Manager.

To exit the Quick Launch Utility window:

1 Click the Close (x) button at the top-right of the window. For details, click **Help** of each application.

Status Window

The Status Window button opens the Printer Status window. For more information about using Status Window, refer to "Printer Status Window."

Tool Box

The Tool Box button opens the Tool Box. For more information about using Tool Box, refer to "Understanding the Tool Box Menus."

Updater

The Updater button updates the Dell software and printer firmware.

Troubleshooting

The Troubleshooting button opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to solve problems by yourself.

Address Book Editor

The Address Book Editor button opens the Address Book Editor, which allows you to register the contact information such as phone number and e-mail address. For more information about using Address Book Editor, refer to "Using Address Book Editor."

ScanButton Manager

The ScanButton Manager button opens the ScanButton Manager, which allows you to specify how the ScanButton Manager behaves for scan events that the device generates (USB connection only). For more information about using ScanButton Manager, refer to "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC."

Address Books

There are several address books available for Scan and Fax functions. Address books help you organize contact information, such as e-mail addresses, fax numbers and server information, and quickly choose the recipient or locate the address. The address book data can be obtained from the printer or a remote LDAP server.



NOTE: Phone Book is described as one of Address Books in this section.



NOTE: For information on how to setup the LDAP server, see "LDAP Server" and "LDAP User Mapping." For information on how to obtain e-mail addresses and fax numbers from LDAP servers, see "Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book."

Types of Address Books

- E-mail Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)
 - E-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail
- Email Group (for Scan to E-mail)
 - Groups of e-mail addresses registered for sending the scanned document via e-mail
- LDAP Server Address Book (for Scan to E-mail)
 - E-mail addresses registered in the LDAP server for sending the scanned document via e-mail

- Network Address Book (for Scan to Network) Computer and FTP server information registered for sending the scanned document to a computer or ftp server
- Phone Book (for Fax)

Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer

• Group Dial (for Fax)

Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your printer

• LDAP Server Phone Book (for Fax)

Fax numbers registered in the LDAP server for sending documents from your printer

PC Fax Address Book (for Direct Fax)

Fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

PC Fax Address Book for group (for Direct Fax) Groups of fax numbers registered for sending documents from your computer

Adding and Editing Entries to the Address Books

There are following three ways to add or edit entries to the address books:

- Operator panel of the printer
- Address Book Editor
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Functions	Features	Types of Address Books	Entry Registration		
			Operator Panel on the Printer	Address Book Editor	Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool
Scan	E-mail	Address Book	-	•	•
		Email Group	-	•	•
		Server Address Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Network	Address Book	-	•	•
Fax	Fax	Phone Book	•	•	•
		Group Dial	•	•	•
		Server Phone Book (LDAP server)	-	-	-
	Direct Fax	PC Fax Address Book	-	•	-
		PC Fax Address Book - group	-	•	-

Using Operator Panel of the Printer

You can directly enter the fax numbers on the operator panel.

NOTE: For information on how to add a new entry, see "Setting Speed Dial."

Using Address Book Editor

You can use Address Book Editor installed on your computer to add or edit entries. Address Book Editor is synchronized with the address books of your printer and updated simultaneously as you save changes to the entries in Address Book Editor.

NOTE: This tool is supported on both Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh.



NOTE: When the printer and your computer is connected via USB, you must install the scanner driver.

With Address Book Editor, you can:

- Automatically retrieves data from the address books of your printer at startup
- Synchronizes with the printer
- Allows you to import the Address Book data from CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, and LDAP server
- Allows you to export the Address Book data into a CSV file

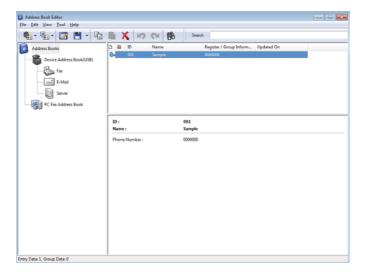


NOTE: Do not edit the exported CSV file with applications other than the Address Book Editor. Editing the CSV file with other applications may corrupt the address data.

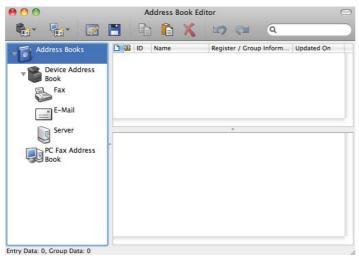
Address Book Panel

There are two address books you can manage in the Address Book Editor: Device Address Book for Fax, E-mail, and Server and PC Fax Address Book for Direct Fax.

For Microsoft Windows:



For Apple Macintosh:



Device Address Book

Fax

Links to the printer's Address Book for Fax feature. You can register up to 200 fax numbers and 6 groups with 200 fax numbers.

E-Mail

Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to E-mail feature. You can register up to 100 e-mail addresses and 10 groups with 10 e-mail addresses.

Server

Links to the printer's Address Book for Scan to Network feature. You can register up to 32 server information.

PC Fax Address Book

You can manage the PC Fax Address Book for using Direct Fax feature on your computer. You can register up to 500 fax numbers and 500 groups with 30 fax numbers.

Editing an entry:

- 1 Select an Address Book that the entry you want to edit is stored.
- **2** Select an entry that you want to edit.
- 3 Click Edit, and enter new information.
- 4 Click Save to save changes.
 - NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

Using Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

You can use Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool using a general web browser.



NOTE: For information on how to add a new entry, see "Address Book."



NOTE: When the address book entries are updated, it synchronizes with the printer and updates the address books of your printer simultaneously.

App Manager

The App Manager - Dell C2665dnf is a utility that lets you manage the apps on your printer.

The following tasks can be performed from the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf:

- Install, update, and uninstall apps
- Back up and restore printer settings, address books, and apps



CAUTION: Do not turn off the printer or the computer while backing up or restoring data.



NOTE: The App Manager - Dell C2665dnf can back up the data of 10 printers. For each printer, up to five backup history can be cached.



- Settings data of Default Settings, Network Settings, Fax Settings, Maintenance, Secure Settings, and USB Settings
- Data that is integral with other setting data such as digital certificates
- Data that is specific to the printer such as an IP address
- Data that is not permitted to be backed up due to security reasons
- Settings about date and time, and also settings that are associated with date and time
- Data that are considered invalid for settings of the printer



NOTE: The time it takes to send and create backup files may take longer depending on the data size.



NOTE: The features of the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf may not be used when the printer has an error. If the App Manager -Dell C2665dnf does not respond, check and clear the status of the printer.

Preparing to use the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf

To use the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf, it is recommended that your computer should have more than 25GB of storage space.



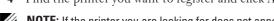
NOTE: Your computer needs to be connected to a network. USB connection is not supported.

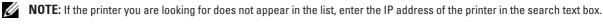


NOTE: For Windows XP and Windows Vista, .Net Framework 3.5 or later is required.

Using the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf

- 1 Click Start→All Programs→Dell Printers→Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer→App Manager
- 2 Click Printers.
- 3 Click Add Printer.
- 4 Find the printer you want to register and click Add.





- 5 Enter the same ID and password that is used for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, and click OK.
- **6** Click \leftarrow to return to the printer list.
 - Click the printer you want to manage from the list.



NOTE: If the printer you are looking for does not appear in the list or cannot be accessed from the App Manager - Dell C2665dnf, check that the On check box for Port9100 and SNMP is selected in the Port Settings of Print Server Settings tab in the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Status Monitor Widget for Macintosh

Status Monitor Widget is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Macintosh and the printer.

Status Monitor Widget Feature

Monitoring Dell Printers

Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Macintosh

Receiving Alerts

Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner

Ordering Supplies

Allows you to access the web site to order supplies

Before Installing the Status Monitor Widget

Operating systems

- Mac OS X 10.5
- Mac OS X 10.6
- Mac OS X 10.7
- Mac OS X 10.8

Network protocols and interfaces

- LPR
- Socket 9100
- Bonjour
- USB 2.0 and 1.1 (When connecting with multiple printers of the same model via USB cables, only the printer recognized first can be monitored in the Status Monitor Widget.)

Installing the Status Monitor Widget

- 1 Double-click the Status Monitor Installer icon in the Finder window.
- **2** Follow the on-screen instructions.

When the Install Succeeded screen appears, the installation is complete.

NOTE: Entering the administrative login name and password are required during the installation process.

Opening and Closing the Status Monitor Widget

Opening the Status Monitor Widget

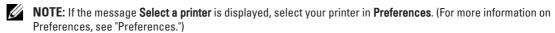
1 Click the Dashboard icon in the Dock to launch Dashboard.



2 Click the Plus (+) sign to display the Widget Bar.



3 Click the icon of Status Monitor in the Widget Bar. The Printer Status window appears.





Closing the Status Monitor Widget

1 Click the Close (x) button in the upper-left corner of the **Printer Status** window.

Printer Status Window

When the Status Monitor Widget is activated, the Printer Status window appears on Dashboard.



Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.



NOTE: The Status Monitor Widget automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in Preferences. Also, the printer status is refreshed when Dashboard is launched or Preferences is closed.



NOTE: If the Status Monitor Widget receives no response from the printer, the message Cannot get printer information is displayed.



NOTE: When the printer is connected via USB cable, you cannot check the status of the printer during a print or scan job.

Printer Status Image Area

Displays the image of printer condition.

Estimated Toner Level image Displays the estimated toner level of each color if the printer is functioning properly.







NOTE: If the utility does not receive a response from the printer, the **Unknown** toner image is displayed.

Printer error image

Displays an indication image when an error occurs.



An error has occurred and the printer cannot be used.

Order Supplies button

Click this button to display the Order window. To hide the Order window, click Order Supplies again.

Info (i) button

Click this button to open Preferences.



NOTE: The info (i) button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the Printer Status window. The info (i) button is a standard used across all widgets.

Order Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site.

To open the Order window:

1 Click Order Supplies in the Printer Status window.

The Order window appears.



NOTE: The **Order** window appears when low toner is detected.



Order Online

- Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site hyperlink Click the Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site hyperlink to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies.
- URL list

Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies.

Select a URL address to use when the Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site hyperlink is clicked.

Order By Phone

- Phone number list
 - Displays a list of available phone numbers that you can call to order Dell printer supplies.
- Update phone contacts when rebooting check box Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

Dell and the Environment

Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.

Preferences

To open Preferences:

1 Click the info (i) button in the Printer Status window.

Preferences appears.



NOTE: The info (i) button appears on the lower-right corner of the window when the cursor is over the Printer Status window. The info (i) button is a standard used across all widgets.



Printer

Displays a list of available printer names in the pull down menu. The first printer displayed in this list is set as default.

Status Update Interval

You can specify the update interval of the printer status. By default, it is set to obtain the printer information every 10 seconds. It can be set from 0 second to 600 seconds.

SNMP Community Name

You can change the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) community name if using default community name (public). Up to 31 characters can be entered.

Service Tag button

Click this button to obtain the service tag.



NOTE: You cannot retrieve the service tag when the printer is connected via USB cable.

done button

Click this button to return to the Printer Status window.

Status Monitor Console for Linux

Status Monitor Console is a printer utility that promotes efficient use of the printer through the exchange of information between the Linux and the printer.

Status Monitor Console Feature

Monitoring Dell Printers

Allows you to check the status of Dell printers currently connected to your Linux.

• Receiving Alerts

Alerts you to problems, such as paper jams or low toner.

Ordering Supplies

Allows you to access the web site to order supplies.

Before Installing the Status Monitor Console



NOTE: The **Status Monitor Console** requires the following modules installed.

- Python, PyGTK, Net-SNMP, cups-libs, and xdg-open

Please confirm that these modules are installed before you install the Status Monitor Console.



NOTE: The Status Monitor Console is available when the printer is connected to a network (LPR or Socket 9100). USB connection is not supported.

Distributions

- Red Hat[®] Enterprise Linux[®] 5 Desktop
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop
- SUSE[®] Linux Enterprise Desktop 10
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11

Printing system

CUPS (Common Unix Printing System)

Installing the Status Monitor Console

- 1 Activate the terminal, and log in as a super user.
- **2** Type the following rpm command in the terminal window.
- # rpm -ivh (Type the package file name)

Starting the Status Monitor Console

1 Click Dell Printers→ Status Monitor Console

The Printer Selection window appears.

For more information on Printer Selection window, see "Printer Selection Window."

2 Select your printer.

The Printer Status window appears.

For more information on Printer Status window, see "Printer Status Window."

You can order supplies from the Dell Supplies Management System window. See "Dell Supplies Management System Window."

Printer Selection Window



Printers list

All the printers registered in the CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) are displayed in a list.

- Status icons:
 - W Ready
 - Unknown/Offline/Toner Low/Paper Low
 - 🔀 Door Open/Paper Jam/No Toner/Out Of Paper

Settings button

Click this button to open the Settings window.

Details button

Click this button to open the Printer Status window. If a non-supported printer is selected, it opens the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. For details on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

Refresh button

Click this button to update the information of printers.

Click this button to close the Printer Selection window.

Printer Status Window

When the printer is specified in the Printer Selection window, the Printer Status window appears.





Printer Status Message Area

Displays a message of the current printer status.



NOTE: The Status Monitor Console automatically obtains the printer information at the updated interval that can be specified in the Settings window. Also, the printer status is refreshed when the Refresh is clicked.



NOTE: If the Status Monitor Console receives no response from the printer, the message Cannot get printer information is displayed.

Printer Status Image Area

Current Toner Status icons

Displays icons of the current status of each toner.

- The toner level is more than 30%.
- 1 The toner level is less than 29%.
- The toner level is less than 9%.
- The toner level is unknown.
- Estimated Toner Level images

Keeps you informed about the amount of toner that remains for each color.

Displays an alert message when any remaining toner is low, empty, or unknown.

Order Online

Order Supplies Online button

Click this button to access the web site for ordering Dell printer supplies. This button appears when the amount of toners becomes less than 30%.

Refresh button

Click this button to update the status of the printer.

Close button

Click this button to close the Printer Status window.

Dell Supplies Management System Window

This window provides you with the information for ordering printer supplies by telephone or from the web site. To open the Dell Supplies Management System window:

1 Click Order Supplies Online in the Printer Status window. OR

Click Dell Printers→ Dell Supplies Management System.



Select Printer Model

Select your printer model name.

Order Online

- Order Supplies Online button
 - When the Regular URL is selected in the Select Reorder URL: Click this button to open the Service Tag window.
 - When the Premier URL is selected in the Select Reorder URL: Click this button to open the procurement and support web site.
- Select Reorder URL

Displays a list of available URLs where you can order Dell printer supplies. Select a URL address to use when the Order Supplies Online button is clicked.

- Regular URL: http://Accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx
- Premier URL: http://premier.dell.com

Order by Phone

- To order Dell printer supplies by phone, call the following Select your country with phone number from the list, and call the displayed telephone number to order supplies.
- Update phone contacts when rebooting check box Select this check box to regularly update the phone number list.

Dell and the Environment

Click the hyperlink to access the web site about recycling.

Close button

Click this button to close the Dell Supplies Management System window.

Service Tag Window



1 Enter the Dell printer service tag.

NOTE: For information on the service tag, see "Express Service Code and Service Tag."

Settings Window

To open the Settings window:

1 Click Settings in the Printer Selection window.

The Settings window appears.



Update of status

- Printer Status is regularly updated check box
 Select the check box to enable/disable the printer status to be updated by the specified interval.
- Update interval text box
 Specify the update interval of the printer status.

Port Number Settings

• Port Number

Specify the port number in the Port Number text box to open the setting page of your printer in a web browser.

Protocol Settings - SNMP

Community Name

Enter the Community name of SNMP in the Community Name text box.

Order URL

• Select Reorder URL

The selected URL address is set as default web site for the Select Reorder URL in the Dell Supplies Management System window.

User Authentication

Using the user authentication function, it is possible to create and manage up to 18 user accounts secured with a password. Each user of the accounts can customize the home screen and save the changes.

It is also possible to associate NFC (Near Field Communication) capable ID Cards to an user account. When the ID card is associated with a user account, you can login to that user account by waving the ID card over the NFC reader.



NOTE: This printer supports the following card types:

- MIFARE® Ultralight
- MIFARE Standard (Classic) 1K
- MIFARE Standard (Classic) 4K

Creating and Editing the User Accounts

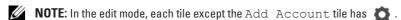
To use user authentication, you must first create a user account.

Creating a New User Account

- 1 Turn on the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.
- 2 Tap 🗖 .
 - **NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Control is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to proceed

The dialog box is displayed to confirm to enter the edit mode.

The printer enters the edit mode, and the Add Account tile is displayed in the portal screen.



4 Enter the account name and select the tile color.

You can preview the image of your custom tile in Preview.



5 Tap Next.

The Account Settings 2/2 screen is displayed.

6 Enter the account password and NFC ID.

MOTES:

- When there is a check mark in the Initial Login check box, the printer always displays the **Home** screen of the account when you turn on the printer. If no account is specified as Initial Login, the portal screen is displayed when you turn on the printer.
- You can create a new account without setting the account password.
- When the NFC Authentication is disabled, NFC ID is not displayed.
- When you use UID as the NFC ID, enter the hexadecimal characters. The characters A to F should be entered in the capital
- 7 Tap Done. The screen returns to the portal screen.

Editing the User Account

- **1** Tap **1** in the portal screen to enter the edit mode.
- **2** Tap the account tile you want to edit.
- **3** Edit the account name, tile color, password, NFC ID, or Initial Login.
 - **NOTE:** When the NFC authentication is disabled, **NFC ID** is not displayed.
- 4 Tap Done.

The screen returns to the portal screen.

Deleting the User Account

- **1** Tap **o** in the portal screen to enter the edit mode.
- 2 Tap and hold the account tile you want to edit.
 - is displayed.
- 3 Drag the tile to $\overline{\mathbf{x}}$.
- **4** Tap OK to delete the tile.

Logging In to the User Account

There are two ways to log in to the account. One is to log in using the touch panel, and the other is to log in using the NFC authentication card.

Logging In Using the Touch Panel

- 1 Start the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.
- **2** Tap the account tile you want to log in to.
 - **NOTE**: When the account you want to log in to does not require a password, skip step 3. The **Home** screen is displayed.
- **3** Enter the account password, and tap Login.

When the password is correct, the Home screen is displayed.

Logging In Using the NFC Authentication Card

To use the NFC authentication card, the following settings are needed:

- Enable the NFC authentication function in Secure Settings of the operator panel. (See "NFC Authentication")
- Register your user account to the printer so that you can log in with your NFC Authentication card. (See "Creating a New User Account")
- 1 Turn on the printer and wait until the portal screen is displayed.
 - **NOTE:** The NFC authentication is available only when the portal screen is displayed.
- **2** Wave the card over the NFC reader on the printer. Your Home screen is displayed.

Logging Out

When there is an account which is specified as Initial Login, turning on the printer will always display the Home screen of that account. To log in to another account, you need to log out first.

1 Press the **—O** (Login/Logout) button on the operator panel. The screen returns to the portal screen.

Multiple Desktop - Tile Customization

The Home screen is like a desktop of your computer and customizable to suit your preference or work style.

For example, you can gather only the tiles you often use, or rearrange the tiles so that you can easily access the tiles you often use.



The tiles on the Home screen can be the shortcuts to the jobs to be done on the printer, like "taking seven copies of the handouts for the weekly meeting in 2-Sided color copy" or "scanning the document and sending the scanned file to my boss by e-mail." If you create a tile for a job with such job settings, the printer will automatically change the settings of the printer as you specified just by tapping the tile.

Adding a New Tile

You can select and add the tile from the pre-defined tiles, or you can create a new customized tile which includes specific settings for copy, fax, scan or print. Up to 41 tiles can be placed in your Home screen.

Selecting From the Pre-defined Tiles

The printer offers the pre-defined tiles which include the default job settings.

- 1 On the Home screen, tap the Add App tile. The Apps List screen is displayed.
- **2** Tap the tile you want to add to your **Home** screen.
 - indicates that the tile already exists in your Home screen.

Creating a New Tile Including the Job Settings

You may often use the same settings to copy a certain document, for example. You can create the tile including those job settings and save it in your Home screen.

Creating Your Custom Tile for Job With Its Job Settings

The following explanation is an example to create your custom tile for copying.

To create custom tiles for other jobs such as faxing, scanning, or printing, follow the same procedures on the job settings screen of each job.

1 Tap the Copy tile in your Home screen.

The Copy Settings screen is displayed.

- 2 Tap the setting tiles to change the copy options as needed. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options."
- **3** After setting all the necessary copy options, tap ...

The Save Settings screen is displayed.

- **4** Tap the text box to name your settings.
- **5** Tap the color tile to select the color of your custom tile.

You can preview the image of your custom tile in Preview.

6 Tap Save As.

Your settings are saved as a new tile in your Home screen.



NOTE: When a tile has the Lock icon, that function is controlled by the Function Enabled setting. To enable the function, you need to enter the password.

For more information, see "Function Enabled."



NOTE: When you save the job settings for Fax or Scan to E-mail as a custom tile, recipient information is saved together with the settings. To prevent from sending faxes or e-mails to wrong recipients, check that the fax number or the e-mail address of the recipient shown in the operator panel is correct.

To prevent others from using customized tiles with personal information, logout from your user account after you finish using the printer.

Editing Your Custom Tile for Job

You can edit the job settings saved in your custom tile.

- **1** Tap the tile you want to edit in your **Home** screen.
- **2** Change the job settings as needed.

The Save Settings screen is displayed.

- **4** Tap the text box to name your settings if you want to rename your settings.
- **5** Tap the color tile if you want to change the color of the tile.
- 6 Tap Save.

Your settings are overwritten.

If you have renamed the tile name, the new settings overwrites the old settings, and the tile is renamed with a new name.



NOTE: If you tap Save As instead, the new tile will be added in your **Home** screen.

Moving or Deleting Your Tiles

You can move your tiles in your Home screen or delete your tiles from your Home screen.

For more information, see "Moving, Adding or Deleting the Tiles."

Using the Server Address Book and Server Phone Book

With the E-mail Server Address Book and the Fax Server Phone Book, you can specify an e-mail address or fax number of a recipient registered in the external LDAP server when sending a scanned image with e-mail or fax.

To use the E-mail Server Address Book and the Fax Server Phone Book, the printer needs to be configured in order to access the external LDAP server.



NOTE: To configure the settings of the external LDAP server, consult your system administrator.

Preparing the Printer to Access the External LDAP Server

Set the following items using the Dell[™] Printer Configuration Web Tool.

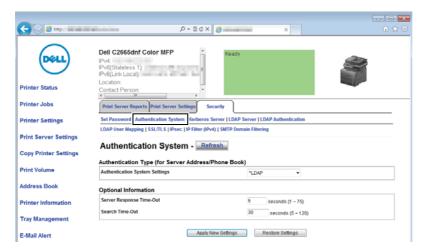
- Authentication type
- LDAP Server
- LDAP User Mapping

Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser. If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the system settings report or display the TCP/IP Settings page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings."

Setting Authentication Type

1 Select Print Server Settings, click the Security tab, and then select Authentication System.



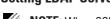
2 From the Authentication System Settings drop-down menu under Authentication Type (for Server Address/Phone Book), select LDAP as the authentication method, and then click Apply New Settings.



NOTE: When the server you are accessing uses the Kerberos authentication, select Kerberos as the authentication method. To set the information necessary to access the Kerberos server, enter the information in Kerberos Server under the Security tab. For more information, see "Kerberos Server."

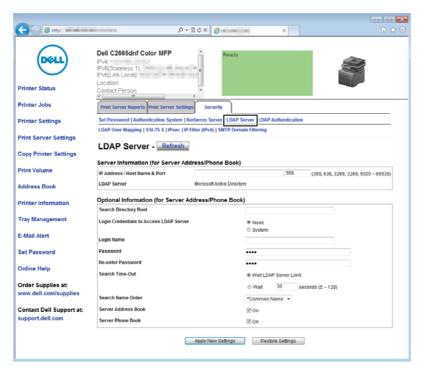
3 Click Restart Printer.

Setting LDAP Server



NOTE: When SSL/TLS communication is required to access the LDAP server, enter a check in the Enable check box for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication in SSL/TLS under the Security tab. For more information, see "SSL/TLS."

Select Print Server Settings, click the Security tab, and then select LDAP Server.



- 2 In the IP Address/Host Name & Port text box under Server Information (for Server Address/Phone Book), enter IP address or the host name, and the port number. The port number must be 389, 3268, or between 5,000 and 65,535.
 - NOTE: When LDAPS communication is required, set the port number to 636, and when you use the global catalog, set the port number to 3269.
- Under Optional information (for Server Address/Phone Book), set the following items.

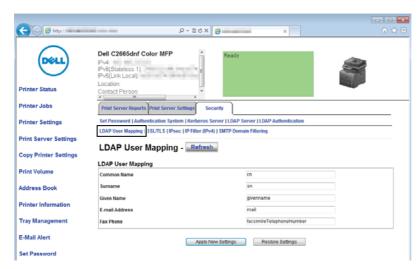


For details on configuring each item, consult your network administrator.

- In the Search Directory Root text box, enter the search directory root.
- In Login Credentials to Access LDAP Server, select credential used to access the LDAP server. b
- In the Login Name text box, enter the login name. C
- In the Password text box, enter the login password using 1 to 127 alphanumeric characters. If the password is left blank (NULL), you cannot log in to a server.
- In the Re-enter Password text box, enter the login password again to confirm it.
- In Search Time-Out, select Wait LDAP Server Limit to follow the time specified by the LDAP server. Select Wait to specify the time between 5 and 120 seconds.
- From the Search Name Order drop-down menu, specify the search order.
- In Server Address Book, select the check box to enable the server address book.
- In Server Phone Book, select the check box to enable the server phone book.
- 4 Click Apply New Settings.
- 5 Click Restart Printer.

Setting LDAP User Mapping

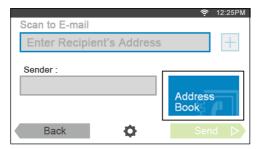
1 Select Print Server Settings, click the Security tab, and then select LDAP User Mapping.



- 2 Specify the attribute names used in the LDAP server. If the attribute names are not customized in the LDAP server, leave the settings in this step as they are by default.
- **3** Click **Apply New Settings** if you make any changes.
- 4 Click Restart Printer.

Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File Using the E-mail Server Address Book

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Scan to E-mail.
- 3 Tap Address Book.



- 4 Tap Network Address Book.
- Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap Search.
- Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap Done.
- 7 Tap Send to begin sending e-mail.

Sending a Fax Using the Fax Server Phone Book

- 1 Press the (Home) button.
- 2 Tap Fax.
- 3 Tap Phone Book.



- 4 Tap Network Address Book.
- **5** Enter a keyword using the keyboard, and then tap Search.
- Tap a recipient from the search result, and then tap Done.
- 7 Tap Send to begin sending the fax.

Using Digital Certificates

The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data.

This chapter describes how to manage digital certificates.

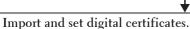


NOTE: For information about digital certificate error, see "Understanding Printer Messages" and "Digital Certificate Problems."

The following is a typical setup flow for using digital certificates.

Prepare to manage digital certificates.

Set HTTPS Communication



- Import a Digital Certificate
- Set a Digital Certificate
- Confirm the Settings of a Digital Certificate

Set various security features using digital certificates.

Managing Certificates

This section describes how to manage digital certificates as follows.

- "Preparing to Manage Certificates"
- "Importing a Digital Certificate"
- "Setting a Digital Certificate"
- "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate"
- "Deleting a Digital Certificate"
- "Exporting a Digital Certificate"

Preparing to Manage Certificates

Before managing digital certificates, the following settings must be applied.

"Setting HTTPS Communication"

Setting HTTPS Communication

Before managing certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate.

When Using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - **b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select Print Server Settings.
- **3** Click the Security tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.
- 5 Click Generate Self-Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate. The Generate Self-Signed Certificate page is displayed.
- **6** Select the size of public key from the list of **Size of Public Key**.
- 7 Specifies the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.
- 8 Click Generate Signed Certificate.
- 9 The Restart Printer button is displayed after generating the self-signed certificate, and then click Restart Printer.
- **10** Repeat steps 2 to 4 to display the SSL/TLS page after restarting the printer.
- 11 If the self-signed certificate is set correctly, since the HTTP- SSL/TLS Communication column is set to Enable and a check box is displayed, select Enable.

Importing a Digital Certificate



CAUTION: Before importing a certificate file, back up the certificate file.



NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage



NOTE: Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.



NOTE: After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - **b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select Print Server Settings.
- 3 Click the Security tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.
- 5 Click Upload Signed Certificate of Machine Digital Certificate.

The Upload Signed Certificate page is displayed.

- **6** Enter a password.
- **7** Re-enter the password again to confirm it.
- **8** Click Browse of File Name, and select the file to be imported.
- **9** Click **Import** to import the certificate.

Setting a Digital Certificate



NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates.'

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - **b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

2 Select Print Server Settings.

- **3** Click the Security tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.
- 5 Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
- 6 When setting a Wireless LAN (Server) certificate, select Trusted Certificate Authorities within Category. When setting a certificate of SSL Server, SSL Client, IPsec, or Wireless LAN (Client), select Local Device.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
- **8** Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.
- 9 Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that Validity of the certificate selected is set to Valid.
- 10 Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
- 11 Confirm the content, and click Use This Certificate at the upper-right corner.

Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate



- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select Print Server Settings.
- **3** Click the Security tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.
- **5** Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
- **6** Select the category from the Category list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
- **8** Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.
- The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "*Valid" in the Validity column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.

Deleting a Digital Certificate



NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage

- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - a Open the web browser.
 - Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select Print Server Settings.
- **3** Click the **Security** tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.

- **5** Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
- **6** Select the category from the Category list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
- **8** Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.
- **9** Select the certificate to be deleted.
- 10 Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
- 11 To delete the selected certificate, click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.
 - NOTE: When a certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted certificate are disabled. To delete a certificate being used, either set the feature to OFF in advance or switch the association to another certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the certificate.
 - For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.
 - For an SSL Client, set the LDAP-SSL/TLS and IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) setting to OFF.
 - For IPsec, change the IKE setting to Pre-Shared Key or set the feature to OFF.
 - For Wireless LAN, change the Wireless Security setting to other than WPA-Enterprise before deleting the certificate.

Exporting a Digital Certificate

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage
- NOTE: Since the secret key is not exported, an imported PKCS#12 format certificate can be exported only as a PKCS#7
- 1 Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Open the web browser.
 - **b** Enter the IP address of your printer in the web browser.

See "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool."

- 2 Select Print Server Settings.
- **3** Click the Security tab.
- 4 Select SSL/TLS.
- **5** Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
- **6** Select the category from the Category list.
- 7 Select the purpose of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
 - Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - **NOTE:** If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.
- **8** Select the certificate to be exported.
- **9** Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
- 10 To export the selected certificate, click Export This Certificate.

Setting the Features

You can set various security features using digital certificates.

See the following for details:

- "Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode"
- "Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)"
- "Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)"
- "Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)"
- "Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)"

Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."
- 1 Import the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set the certificate to be used with IPsec. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly in IPsec. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- **4** Select **Print Server Settings** from the left side of the page.
- **5** Click the Security tab.
- 6 Select IPsec.
- 7 Select the Enable check box for Protocol.
- **8** Select **Digital Signature** from the **IKE** list.
- **9** Set each item, as necessary.
- 10 Click Apply New Settings.
- 11 After restarting the printer, IPsec communication using digital signatures is enabled. You can execute IPsec communication (Digital Signature Mode) between the printer and the network device (such as PC) on which the certificate and IPsec are set identically as on this device.

Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage" Certificates."
- 1 Import the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
 - **NOTE:** Confirm whether the newly set certificate, not the self-signed certificate, is associated.
- 4 After restarting the printer, the certificate set as described above is used as the server certificate when executing communication with HTTP/IPP-SSL/TLS.

Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

- 1 Select Print Server Settings from the left side of the page.
- 2 Click the Security tab.
- 3 Select SSL/TLS.
- 4 Select the Enable check box for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication.
- **5** Click Apply New Settings.
- **6** After restarting the printer, LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication is enabled.
- NOTE: When executing the certificate validity of the server and the presentation of the client certificate, see "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" and "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication."

Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

- **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.
- Import the root certificate (including intermediate certificate) for the LDAP server certificate. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
 - NOTE: In the verification of a certificate of the connected server, to automatically search for an imported certificate and verify the path, the certificate does not need to be associated.
- 2 Confirm whether the root certificate is correctly imported to the LDAP server. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Select Print Server Settings.
- 4 Click the Security tab.
- **5** Select SSL/TLS.
- **6** Select the Enable check box for Verify Remote Server Certificate.
- 7 Click Apply New Settings.
- After restarting the printer, the certificate presented by the LDAP server is verified when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication starts with the LDAP server.
- NOTE: When the result of verification is NG, communication is not established and an error results.

Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."
- **NOTE:** This feature is enabled only when **Enable** is set for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.
- 1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 After restarting the printer, the LDAP client certificate is presented when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication with the LDAP server starts. When the LDAP server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the LDAP server.

Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates."
- **NOTE:** WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.
- **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.
- NOTE: After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.
- Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- **2** Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (server or root certificate).
 - Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Select Print Server Settings.
 - Click the Security tab.
 - Select SSL/TLS.
 - Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
 - Select Trusted Certificate Authorities within Category.
 - Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
 - From Certificate Order, select how the certificates are sorted in Certificate List. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
 - Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that Validity of the certificate selected is set to Valid.
 - Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
 - Confirm the content, and click Use This Certificate at the upper-right corner.
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (client or client certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- **5** Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (client or client certificate).
 - Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Select Print Server Settings.
 - Click the Security tab.
 - Select SSL/TLS.
 - Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
 - Select Local Device within Category. f
 - Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
 - From Certificate Order, select how the certificates are sorted in Certificate List. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
 - Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that Validity of the certificate selected is set to Valid.
 - Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
 - Confirm the content, and click Use This Certificate at the upper-right corner.
- 6 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For details, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."

- **7** Set WPA-Enterprise for EAP-TLS.
 - Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Click the Print Server Settings tab.
 - Select Wireless LAN.
 - **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.
 - Select either of the following from the Encryption list of Secure Settings.
 - WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES
 - WPA-Enterprise-TKIP
 - NOTE: WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
 - Importing a Digital Certificate
 - Setting a Digital Certificate
 - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate
 - Set EAP-Identity of WPA-Enterprise.
 - Select EAP-TLS from the Authentication Method list of WPA-Enterprise.
 - Click Apply New Settings.

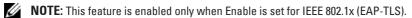
Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)

- NOTE: To manage digital certificates, you must set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates.'
- **NOTE:** WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.
- **NOTE:** Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.
- NOTE: After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.
 - Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate). For details, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- **2** Set the digital certificate for wireless LAN (server or root certificate).
 - Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Select Print Server Settings.
 - c Click the Security tab.
 - d Select SSL/TLS.
 - Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
 - Select Trusted Certificate Authorities within Category.
 - Select the purpose of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
 - Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
 - Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that Validity of the certificate selected is set to Valid.
 - Click Certificate Details to display the Certificate Details page.
 - **k** Confirm the content, and click Use This Certificate at the upper-right corner.
- **3** Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.
 - a Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Select Print Server Settings.
 - c Click the Security tab.

- Select SSL/TLS.
- Click Certificate Management to display the Certificate Management page.
- Select the category from the Category list.
- Select the Wireless LAN (Server) of use from the Certificate Purpose list.
- From Certificate Order, select how the certificates are sorted in Certificate List. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.
- Click Display the List to display the Certificate List page.
- The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "*Valid" in the Validity column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.
- Set WPA-Enterprise for PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, or EAP-TTLS CHAP.
 - Launch Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
 - Click the Print Server Settings tab.
 - Select Wireless LAN.
 - **NOTE:** This setting is available only when the optional wireless adapter is installed.
 - Select either of the following from the Encryption list of Secure Settings.
 - WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES
 - WPA-Enterprise-TKIP
 - NOTE: WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES or WPA-Enterprise-TKIP becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
 - Importing a Digital Certificate
 - Setting a Digital Certificate
 - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate
 - Set EAP-Identity, Login Name, and Password of WPA-Enterprise.
 - Select either of the following from the Authentication Method list of WPA-Enterprise:
 - PEAPV0 MS-CHAPV2
 - **EAP-TTLS PAP**
 - **EAP-TTLS CHAP**
 - g Click Apply New Settings.

Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)





- 1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Importing a Digital Certificate."
- 2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client. For more information, see "Setting a Digital Certificate."
- 3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly. For more information, see "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate."
- 4 After restarting the printer, the IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) certificate is presented when IEEE 802.1x communication with the RADIUS server starts. When the RADIUS server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the RADIUS server.

Understanding Fonts

Typefaces and Fonts

A font is a set of characters and symbols created with a distinct design. The distinct design is called a typeface. The typefaces you select add personality to a document. Well-chosen typefaces make a document easier to read.

The printer has numerous resident fonts in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript Level3 Compatible. See "Resident Fonts" for a listing of all resident fonts.

Weight and Style

Typefaces are often available in different weights and styles. These variations modify the original typeface so you can, for example, emphasize important words in text or highlight book titles. The different weights and styles are designed to complement the original typeface.

Weight refers to the thickness of the lines that form the characters. Thicker lines result in darker characters. Some words commonly used to describe the weight of a typeface are bold, medium, light, black, and heavy.

Style refers to other typeface modifications, such as tilt or character width. Italic and oblique are styles where the characters are tilted. Narrow, condensed, and extended are three common styles that modify the character widths.

Some fonts combine several weight and style modifications; for example, Helvetica BdOb. A group of several weight and style variations of a single typeface is called a typeface family. Most typeface families have four variations: regular, italic (oblique), bold, and bold italic (bold oblique). Some families have more variations, as the following illustration for the Helvetica typeface family shows:

> Helvetica Helvetica Oblique Helvetica Bold Helvetica Bold Oblique Helvetica Narrow Helvetica Narrow Oblique Helvetica Narrow Bold

> Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOabcdefghijklmno1234567890

Pitch and Point Size

The size of a font is specified as either a pitch or point size, depending on whether the font is fixed space or proportional.

In fixed space fonts, each character has the same width. Pitch is used to specify the size of fixed space fonts. It is a measure of the number of characters that will print in one horizontal inch of type. For example, all 10-pitch fonts print 10 characters per inch (cpi) and all 12-pitch fonts print 12 cpi:

Courier-Bold		1234567890 1234567890
Courier Courier-Bold	 Pitch Pitch	123456789012 123456789012
		4 1 inch

In proportional (or typographic) fonts, every character can have a different width. Since proportional fonts have characters with different widths, the font size is specified in point size, not pitch. Point size refers to the height of the characters in the font. A point is defined as 1/72 inch. The characters in a font printed at 24 point will be twice as large as the characters in the same font printed at 12 point.

The following illustration shows samples of a font printed in different point sizes:

48 point 36 point

24 point 18 point 12 point

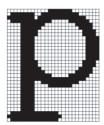
The point size of a font is defined as the distance from the top of the tallest character in the font to the bottom of the lowest character in the font. Due to the definition of point size, different fonts printed at the same point size may appear quite different in size. This is because there are other font parameters that affect how the font looks. However, the point size of a font is an excellent specification of the relative size of a font. The following examples illustrate two very different proportional fonts at 14 point:

> ITC Avant Garde abcdefghABCDEFGH ITC Zapf Chancery abcdefghABCDEFGH

Bitmapped and Scalable Fonts

The printer uses both bitmapped and scalable fonts.

Bitmapped fonts are stored in print memory as predefined patterns of bits that represent a typeface at a specific size, style, and resolution. The following illustration shows an example of a character from a bitmapped font.



Bitmapped fonts are available in different type styles and point sizes as downloadable fonts.

Scalable fonts (also called outline fonts) are stored as computer programs that define the outlines of the characters in the font. Each time you print characters from a scalable font, the printer creates a bitmap of the characters at the point size you choose and saves it temporarily in print memory.



These temporary bitmapped fonts are deleted when you turn off or reset the printer. Scalable fonts provide the flexibility of printing in many different point sizes.

Your printer uses different scalable font formats for downloading fonts to the printer. PCL 5/PCL 6 uses Intellifont and TrueType scalable fonts. PostScript Level3 Compatible uses Type 1 and TrueType scalable fonts. There are thousands of different scalable fonts available in these different font formats from numerous font suppliers.

If you plan to use many downloadable bitmapped or scalable fonts or if you plan to use many different sizes of scalable fonts, you may need to purchase additional memory for your printer.

Resident Fonts

Your printer is equipped with resident fonts stored permanently in print memory. Different fonts are available in PCL 5/PCL 6 and PostScript Level3 Compatible. Some of the most popular typefaces, like Courier and TimesNew (PCL 5/PCL 6)/Times New Roman (PostScript Level3 Compatible), are available for all printer languages.

The following table lists all the fonts resident in your printer. See "Report / List" for instructions on how to print samples of the fonts. You can select the resident fonts from your software program. You can also select the fonts from the operator panel if you are using PCL 5/PCL 6.

Resider	Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6 PostScript Level3 Compatible			
CG Times	CG Times		
CG Times It	CG Times Italic		
CG Times Bd	CG Times Bold		
CG Times BdIt	CG Times Bold Italic		
Univers Md	Univers Medium		
Univers MdIt	Univers Medium Italic		
Univers Bd	Univers Bold		
Univers BdIt	Univers Bold Italic		
Univers MdCd	Univers Condensed Medium		
Univers MdCdIt	Univers Condensed Medium Italic		
Univers BdCd	Univers Condensed Bold		
Univers BdCdIt	Univers Condensed Bold Italic		
AntiqueOlv	Antique Olive		
AntiqueOlv It	Antique Olive Italic		
AntiqueOlv Bd	Antique Olive Bold		

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6 PostScript Level3 Compatible		
CG Omega	CG Omega	
CG Omega It	CG Omega Italic	
CG Omega Bd	CG Omega Bold	
CG Omega BdIt	CG Omega Bold Italic	
Garamond Antiqua	Garamond Antiqua	
Garamond Krsv	Garamond Kursiv	
Garamond Hlb	Garamond Halbfett	
Garamond KrsvHlb	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	
Courier	CourierPCL	
Courier It	CourierPCL-Italic	
Courier Bd	CourierPCL-Bold	
Courier BdIt	CourierPCL-Bold Italic	
LetterGothic	LetterGothic	
LetterGothic It	LetterGothic-Italic	
LetterGothic Bd	LetterGothic-Bold	
Albertus Md	Albertus-Medium	
Albertus XBd	Albertus-ExtraBold	
Clarendon Cd	Clarendon-Condensed-Bold	
Coronet	Coronet	
Marigold	Marigold	
Arial	Arial	
Arial It	Arial-Italic	
Arial Bd	Arial-Bold	
Arial BdIt	Arial-BoldItalic	
mai Duit	/ Mar-polditalic	
TimesNew	TimesNewRoman	
TimesNew It	TimesNewRoman-Italic	
TimesNew Bd	TimesNewRoman-Bold	
TimesNew BdIt	TimesNewRoman-BoldItalic	
0.11	C LIMT	
Symbol	SymbolMT	

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6	PostScript Level3 Compatible	
Wingdings	Wingdings	
Line Printer		
Times Roman	Times-Roman	
Times It	Times-Italic	
Times Bd	Times-Bold	
Times BdIt	Times-BoldItalic	
Helvetica	Helvetica	
Helvetica Ob	Helvetica-Oblique	
Helvetica Bd	Helvetica-Bold	
Helvetica BdOb	Helvetica-BoldOblique	
CourierPS	Courier	
CourierPS Ob	Courier Oblique	
CourierPS Bd	Courier Bold	
CourierPS BdOb	Courier Bold Oblique	
SymbolPS	Symbol	
Palatino Roman	Palatino-Roman	
Palatino It	Palatino-Italic	
Palatino Bd	Palatino-Bold	
Palatino BdIt	Palatino-BoldItalic	
ITCBookman Lt	Bookman-Light	
ITCBookman LtIt	Bookman-LightItalic	
ITCBookmanDm	Bookman-Demi	
ITCBookmanDm It	Bookman-DemiItalic	
HelveticaNr	Helvetica-Narrow	
HelveticaNr Ob	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique	
HelveticaNr Bd	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold	
HelveticaNr BdOb	Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique	
NOG LILIP		
N C Schbk Roman	NewCenturySchoolbook-Roman	
N C Schbk It	NewCenturySchoolbook-Italic	
N C Schbk Bd	NewCenturySchoolbook-Bold	

Resident bitmapped and scalable fonts		
PCL 5/PCL 6	PostScript Level3 Compatible	
ITC A G Go Bk	AvantGarde-GothicBook	
ITC A G Go BkOb	AvantGarde-GothicBookOblique	
ITC A G Go Dm	AvantGarde-GothicDemi	
ITC A G Go DmOb	AvantGarde-GothicDemiOblique	
ZapfC MdIt	ZapfChancery-MediumItalic	
ZapfDingbats	ZapfDingbats	

Symbol Sets

A symbol set is the collection of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special characters available in the font you select. Symbol sets support the requirements for different languages or specific applications, such as math symbols used for scientific text.

In PCL 5/PCL 6, a symbol set also defines which character will print for each key on the keyboard (or more specifically, for each code point). Some applications require different characters at some code points. To support multiple applications and languages, your printer has 36 symbol sets for the resident PCL 5/PCL 6 fonts.

Symbol Sets for PCL 5/PCL 6

Not all font names support all of the symbol sets listed.

Roman 8 (Default)	ISO 8859-1 Latin 1	ISO 8859-2 Latin 2
ISO 8859-9 Latin 5	ISO 8859-10 Latin 6	PC-8
PC-8 DN	PC-775 Baltic	PC-850 Multilingual
PC-852 Latin 2	PC-1004 OS/2	PC Turkish
Windows 3.1 Latin 1	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
DeskTop	PS Text	MC Text
Microsoft Publishing	Math 8	PS Math
Pi Font	Legal	ISO 4 United Kingdom
ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 11 Swedish:names	ISO 15 Italian
ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 21 German	ISO 60 Norwegian v1
ISO 69 French	Windows 3.0 Latin 1	Windows Baltic
Symbol	Wingdings	ITC ZapfDingbats MS

Understanding Printer Messages

The touch panel displays error messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter provides a list of error codes or error messages, and informs you what you can do to clear error messages. When you contact customer support about an error, have the error codes and



CAUTION: When an error occurs, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer may be corrupted.



NOTE: An error code is listed in an error message.



NOTE: For error codes that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.

Error Codes

Error-Code	What you can do
004-310	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the tray is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
005-110	Open the DADF cover and remove the jammed documents.
005-121	
005-124	Open the DADF cover and remove all documents.
009-340	Turn off the printer. Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor, see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."
009-360	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-361	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-362	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-363	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-367	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-368	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-369	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
009-370	Turn off the printer. Make sure that the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."

Error-Code	What you can do
010-317	Turn off the printer, wait for 30 minutes to let the fusing unit cool, and then make sure that the fusing unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-351	Turn off the printer. Remove the used fusing unit, and install a new fusing unit. For more information about replacing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
010-377	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fusing unit is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated. For more information about installing the fusing unit, see "Replacing the Fusing Unit."
016-338	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error message remains on the touch panel, confirm that the wireless adapter is securely inserted. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-404	Contact your system administrator. For more information about digital certificate problems, see "Digital Certificate Problems."
016-405	Security setting mismatch. Initialize the security setting, and then restart the printer. Contact your system administrator for the security resetting.
016-503	Unable to resolve the e-mail SMTP server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Unable to resolve the e-mail POP3 server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-505	E-mail POP3 server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for POP3 server are set correctly.
016-506	SMTP server is not configured. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server or POP server is set.
016-507	E-mail SMTP server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.
016-520	IPsec certificate error. (Certificate error of the printer.) The certificate of the printer is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Reset the certificate from other connectable clients with Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool. If no device can be connected, disconnect Ethernet cable, turn off the IPsec, and then reset the certificate with Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
016-521	IPsec certificate error. (Remote device certification verification error.) The certificate of the destination client is invalid. Contact your system administrator. Confirm the certificate of the destination client and reset.
016-530	Authentication server access error. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Check the access settings for the authentication server and try again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-541	A wireless certificate (server or client) cannot be correctly referenced while using Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.
016-542	A server certificate error has occurred when acquiring the certificate with the operation of WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. This is a problem in the server certificate, such as the validity period has expired for the server certificate being used with the Radius server. Ask your system administrator to confirm the server certificate being used with the Radius server.
016-543	A wireless certificate (server or client) corruption error has occurred while using the Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise. Ask your system administrator to connect the printer with a wired network, initialize the wireless settings, import the wireless certificate, and set WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise again.
016-718	Error relating to USB Direct Print problems has occurred. While the USB memory is still inserted, set Image Types to Photos (Standard Quality) in Print Settings under the Print PDF/TIFF menu and try printing again. For more information about this setting, see "Image Types."
016-720	Error relating to PDL emulation problems has occurred. Change the Print Mode setting in the Graphics tab of the printer driver. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.

Error-Code	What you can do
016-756	Printing in the prohibited time. Contact your system administrator.
016-757	The account is not registered. Contact your system administrator.
016-758	The function cannot be used. Contact your system administrator.
016-759	Printable page limit is exceeded. Contact your system administrator.
016-764	An error occurs when the printer connected to the SMTP server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the SMTP server settings or contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-765	The capacity of the SMTP server is not enough. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-766	The e-mail exceeds the SMTP server size restriction. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact the SMTP server administrator.
016-767	The e-mail address of the recipient is incorrect. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-768	The e-mail address of the sender is incorrect. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-786	A timeout error occurs when sending or receiving scanned data. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-790	Network connection error. (IP address is not determined.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the Ethernet cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the Ethernet cable, contact server administrator.
016-799	Tap Close to clear the message and cancel the current print job. Confirm the configuration of the printer on the printer driver.
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the front USB port.
016-985	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution
016-986	setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
024-920	Remove the paper from the output tray.
024-927	Check the toner gauge on the touch panel for an empty toner cartridge. Remove the empty toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."
024-965	Confirm that the size and type specified in the tray settings matches the size and type of paper loaded in the
024-966	tray.
024-969	_
026-721	Check your USB memory:
	• If the file size or the number of files exceeds the limit of your USB memory.
	If your USB memory is write-protected.
027-446	Change the IPv6 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
027-452	Change the IPv4 address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
031-521	SMB server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-522	SMB server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (domain name and user name) and password are correct.
031-523	Invalid SMB share name. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the share name you specified.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-524	Exceeded the SMB server user account limit. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the number of users who use the server at the same time is not exceeding the upper limit.
031-525	SMB destination client permission error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the specified user can read and write file at the storage location.
031-526	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-527	Unable to resolve the SMB server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-528	Unable to connect to the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer can communicate via network with the forwarding destination SMB server. For example, check the following:
	Connection of an Ethernet cable
	• TCP/IP setting
	• Communication with Port 137 (UDP), 138 (UDP), and 139 (TCP).
	For communication beyond the subnet, contact your system administrator.
031-529	SMB server login error. (Invalid password.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if password is correct.
031-530	The SMB share folder was not found on the specified SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:
	 Check if the storage location is correct.
	 Check if the file name you specified can be used when creating a file on the SMB server.
	 Have your system administrator check the DFS setting, and directly specify the SMB server, share name, and storage location according to the checked settings.
031-531	Unable to get a file or folder name on the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check access right of the folder you specified.
031-532	SMB scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-533	Unable to write a file in the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:
	• If the file name you specified is not used by other users.
	 If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-534	Unable to create a folder on the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:
	• If the file name you specified is not used by other users.
	 If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535	Unable to delete a file on the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-536	Unable to delete a folder on the SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	SMB server capacity exceeded. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-539	The specified SMB server is invalid. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if server name is correct.
031-540	The specified domain name is invalid. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if domain name is correct.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-541	Invalid user name specified for SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) is correct.
031-542	TCP/IP not initialized. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while and try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-543	SMB server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check login permitted time with your system administrator.
031-544	SMB server login error. (Expired password.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the password valid period with your system administrator.
031-545	SMB server login error. (Password change required.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check necessity of password change with your system administrator.
031-546	SMB server login error. (Invalid user is specified.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-547	SMB server login error. (The specified user is restricted from accessing the SMB server.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-548	SMB server login error. (Logon time of SMB destination expired.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Contact your system administrator for the destination server settings.
031-549	SMB server login error. Specified user is restricted, and a null password is prohibited. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. On server security settings, check access permission of null password user.
031-550	Append command not supported by SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-551	Rename command not supported by SMB server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the SMB server. Check if server supports SMB append command.
031-552	Job canceled. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-574	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Unable to resolve the FTP server hostname. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Unable to connect to the FTP server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of Ethernet cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.
031-578	FTP server login error. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Invalid FTP subdirectory path. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct.
031-580	Failed to obtain a file or folder name of the FTP server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access right.
031-581	FTP scan file or folder name limit exceeded. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-582	Unable to write a scan file to the FTP server location. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-584	Unable to create a scan folder on the FTP server. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585	Unable to delete a file on the FTP server. (DEL command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-587	Unable to delete a folder on the FTP server. (RMD command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-588	Unable to write a file to the FTP server location. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-590	Job canceled. Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-594	FTP transfer type error. (TYPE command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-595	FTP data port error. (PORT command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-598	FTP append data error. (APPE command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to append data to the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP append command.
031-599	FTP rename file error. (RNFR command failure.) Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the printer has access rights to rename data on the FTP server. Check if server supports FTP rename command.
033-513	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following:
	 Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
	 Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature.
	For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
033-527	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Wait for a while until the printer is not busy, and try again.
033-528	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the available time period for the FAX, and try again.
033-762	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. The printer rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers. For more information, see "Junk Fax Setup."
033-776	The size of the fax document data is too large and may have exceeded the space available in memory. Lower the scan resolution rate and then try scanning again. For details, see "Adjusting the Document Resolution."
033-788	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following:
	 Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
	Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature.
	For more information about the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode."
034-515	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following:
	• Try the same operation.

• Check the printer or remote machine if the memory is full.

Error-Code	What you can do	
034-791	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the telephone line cord is connected	
	properly. If the line connection is correct, check the following:	
	• If Tone/Pulse setting is correct.	
	For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse."	
	If Tone/Pulse setting is correct, check the following:	
	• If the remote machine can receive a fax.	
035-701	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the following:	
	Status of the remote machine	
	Tone/Pulse setting	
	For more information about Tone/Pulse setting, see "Tone / Pulse."	
035-708	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Try the following:	
	• Try the same operation.	
	Reduce the modem speed.	
	For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."	
035-717	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Reduce the modem speed. For more information about modem speed, see "Modem Speed."	
035-718	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the status of the remote machine.	
035-720	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check the features of the remote machine.	
035-781	Tap Close, or wait for 60 seconds for the printer to recover. Check if the remote machine is busy.	
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.	
075-910	Make sure that the multipurpose feeder (MPF) is fully installed.	
077-300	Close the front cover.	
077-301	Close the right side cover.	
077-302	Close the rear cover.	
091-911	Remove the used waste toner box, and install a new toner box. For more information about replacing the waste toner box, see "Replacing the Waste Toner Box."	
091-914	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-917	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-918	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-919	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about reinserting the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-921	Make sure that the black drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-922	Make sure that the yellow drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drun cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-923	Make sure that the magenta drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-924	Make sure that the cyan drum cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-931	Remove the used black drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	

Error-Code	What you can do	
091-932	Remove the used yellow drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-933	Remove the used magenta drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacin the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-934	Remove the used cyan drum cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-942	Reinsert the black drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-943	Reinsert the yellow drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-944	Reinsert the magenta drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-945	Reinsert the cyan drum cartridge. If the message remains, replace the cartridge. For more information about replacing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-960	Remove the unsupported yellow drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-961	Remove the unsupported magenta drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-962	Remove the unsupported cyan drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
091-963	Remove the unsupported black drum cartridge, and install a supported drum cartridge. For more information about installing the drum cartridge, see "Replacing the Drum Cartridges."	
092-651	Clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab. For more information about cleaning the CTD sensor see "Cleaning the CTD Sensor."	
093-930	Remove the used yellow toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-931	Remove the used magenta toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-932	Remove the used cyan toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-933	Remove the used black toner cartridge, and install a new cartridge. For more information about replacing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-960	Remove the unsupported yellow toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-961	Remove the unsupported magenta toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-962	Remove the unsupported cyan toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-963	Remove the unsupported black toner cartridge, and install a supported toner cartridge. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-970	Make sure that the yellow toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-971	Make sure that the magenta toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
093-972	Make sure that the cyan toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	

Error-Code	What you can do	
093-973	Make sure that the black toner cartridge is fully installed. For more information about installing the tone cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridges."	
094-422	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."	
094-910	Make sure that the transfer belt unit is fully installed. For more information about installing the transfer be unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Rolle	
094-911	Remove the used transfer belt unit, and install a new transfer belt unit. For more information about replacing the transfer belt unit, see "Replacing the Transfer Belt Unit, the 2nd Belt Transfer Roller (2nd BTR), and the Retard Roller."	
116-722	Tap Close for the printer to recover. Check the WSD scan address and the destination computer, and then try scanning again. Contact your system administrator.	
193-700	When genuine toner cartridges are installed, change the Non-Dell Toner setting to disable using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool or the Tool Box.	

Error Messages

Message	Cause	Action
Cannot access the LDAP address book. Consult your network	The printer fails to authenticate against an authentication server.	Check the server settings. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
administrator if this error persists.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; an SSL authentication internal error occurs.	If the error persists, consult your network administrator.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS server certificate is not correct.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate data is incorrect.	Check the root certificate of the LDAP server SSL certificate on the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The LDAPS SSL client certificate is not set.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server cannot acquire an SSL client certificate.	Check that an SSL client certificate is correctly imported into the printer.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The server names of LDAPS and the SSL certificate do not match.	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the server certificate for the LDAP server is not yet valid or has expired.	
	An SSL authentication error on connection to the LDAP server; the LDAP server name does not match the certificate.	Set the LDAP server address on the printer to match the address on the LDAP server SSL certificate.
Cannot access the LDAP address book. The time settings of the printer and the Kerberos server do not match.	The printer and the Kerberos server clocks have a time difference that exceeds the Kerberos server clock skew value.	Check that the printer and the Kerberos server clocks have the correct time.
Cannot connect to server. Check the server settings.	The specified server settings such as IP address and realm/domain name are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct IP address/host name, port number, realm/domain name, and search directory root are specified in IP Address / Host Name & Port, Domain Name, and Search Directory Root on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
	The LDAP or Kerberos version on the server is not compatible with the printer.	Consult your network administrator.

Message	Cause	Action
	The server is down.	Check that the server is functioning normally.
Change the server settings and confirm the server connection.	The printer cannot search for destinations within the specified time.	Increase the time setting for Search Time-Out on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. (See "Authentication System" and "LDAP Server.")
		Check that the printer and the server are properly connected with an Ethernet cable. If there are not any problems with the connection and the error persists, the server settings may have been changed. Consult your network administrator.
Check the authentication settings.	The login name and password for access to an authentication server are incorrect.	Make sure that the correct login name and password are specified in Login Name and Password on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. (See "Kerberos Server" and "LDAP Server.")
Invalid search characters or LDAP User Mapping incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The LDAP search filter fails to work properly as special characters are used in your search condition or on the LDAP User Mapping page on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.	Remove special characters, and then search again. (See "LDAP User Mapping.")
Network connection is not ready. Try again later.	You have started searching for destinations before the IP address is set for the printer.	Wait for a while, and then search again.
No attribute or invalid name. Confirm address info. on server.	The address information on the server contain incorrect data or are insufficient to get your search request.	Check the address information registered on the server or consult your network administrator.
No Entries.	The printer cannot find any destinations that meet your search condition.	Tap OK to return to the Search Network Address Book screen, and then specify a new condition to search again.
Search Directory Root incorrectly configured for Configuration Web Tool.	The directories that do not exist in the LDAP server are specified or an invalid DN syntax is specified.	Make sure that valid values are specified in Search Directory Root on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. (See "LDAP Server.") Specify the origin of the search with the correct DN syntax, as shown in the following example:
		dc=w2008ad,dc=addressbook,dc=net
Too many search results. Only a maximum of 50 search scan be displayed. Please refine your search if needed.	The number of search results has exceeded the limits (50 search results) the printer can display.	Tap Close to display the search results. If you cannot find your desired destination on the result list, specify a new condition to search again.
Authentication server access Error 016-530 Restart the printer.	Some other error occurs regarding the LDAP server address book.	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. If the error persists, consult your network administrator.

Specifications

Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista[®], Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows RT, Mac OS X 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

Power Supply

Rated voltage	220 VAC - 240 VAC	110 VAC - 127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5 A or less	9 A or less
Power consumption	67.0 W (Ready)	63.0 W (Ready)
	15.0 W (Sleep)	14.5 W (Sleep)
	3.5 W (Deep Sleep)	3.5 W (Deep Sleep)
	0 W (Offline)	0 W (Offline)
TEC value	2.8 kWh	2.8 kWh

Dimensions

Height: 558 mm (21.97 inches) Width: 439 mm (17.28 inches) Depth: 530 mm (20.87 inches)

Weight (including toner cartridges and drum cartridges): 43.9 kg (96.78 lb)

Memory

Memory	1 GB
Speed	DDR3-1066MHz

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	PCL 6, PCL5e, PostScript Level3 Compatible, HBPL, XML Paper Specification (Host Based)	
Operating systems	Microsoft Windows XP/XP x64/Server 2003/Server 2003 x64/Server 2008/Server 2008 x64/Server 2008 R2 x64/Vista/Vista x64/7/7 x64/8/8 x64/Server 2012, Mac OS X (10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8), Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86), and SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T Ethernet
	Optional network:	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n (Wireless)

MIB Compatibility

Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell C2665dnf Color Laser Multifunction Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

Environment

Operation

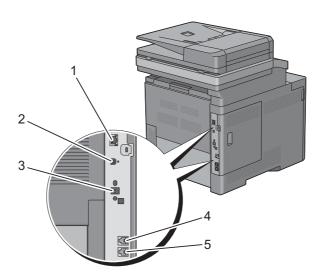
Temperature	10 °C - 32 °C	
Relative humidity	10 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)	
Print Quality Guarantee		
Temperature	15 °C - 28 °C	
Relative humidity	20 % - 70 % RH (no condensation)	
Storage		
Temperature range	-20 °C to 40 °C (0 °F to 104 °F)	
Storage humidity range	5 % - 85 % RH (no condensation)	
Altitude		
Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)	
Storage	Up to 3,100 m (10,170 feet)	

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols	
1	Ethernet	10Base-T/100Base-TX/	
		1000Base-T	-모-
			白白
2	USB	USB 2.0	
			+,↑,,
			Ψ
3	Wireless adapter socket	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n	•
J	Wileiess anapter socket	TEEE 002.110/002.11g/002.11ff	((ullet)
4	Phone connector		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
4	i none connector		PHONE
			^

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols	
5	Wall jack connector		LINE



Copier Specifications

Item	Description
Copy resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 600 dpi
Copy speed	Color 27 cpm or more, Black & White 27 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.)
	Simplex: Color 13 cpm or more, Black & White 22 cpm or more
	Duplex: Color 4 cpm or more, Black & White 7 cpm or more
	(When using the Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
Paper size A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive, Folio (8.5" x 13"), Legal, Envelope #1 DL, C5	
Zoom rate	Document glass: 25 % - 400 %, DADF: 25 % - 400 %
Multiple copies	1 - 99
Copy mode (=Original type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo
Scanning method	Document glass: Document-fixed flatbed scanning
	DADF: Carriage-fixed, document-feeding scanning (2- side scanning)

Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	TWAIN, TWAIN-Net, Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) ^{*1} ,
	Scan Service for Web Services on Devices (WSD)*2

Item	Description
Scan resolution	Optical: 600 dpi x 300 dpi (Color only), 600 dpi x 400 dpi, 600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1,200 dpi x 1,200 dpi
	Enhanced (Pull Scan):
	• TWAIN – 50 x 50 to 9,600 x 9,600 dots/25.4 mm
	• WIA – 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm
	Enhanced (Push Scan):
	200(Default)/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm
Color bit depth	24 bit
Mono bit depth	l bit for Line art. 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm, DADF: 355,6 mm
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm
Scan speed (Text mode)	Monochrome: 665 µs/line (600 dpi), 1330 µs/line (1200 dpi)
	Color: 1330 µs/line (600 dpi), 2660 µs/line (1200 dpi)

^{*1 :} Windows OS only

Facsimile Specifications

Description
ITU-T Super G3, ITU-T G3 ECM, ITU-T G3
Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), Private Branch Exchange (PBX), or Leased line (3.4 KHz/2-wire)
lbit/JBIG/MMR/MR/MH
33.6 Kbps
Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) DADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Document glass: 297 mm DADF: 355.6 mm
Letter, A4 (depending on a country)
Standard: R8 x 3.85 l/mm, Fine: R8 x 7.7 l/mm, Super Fine: 400 dpi x 400 dpi, Photo: R8 x 7.7 l/mm
4 MB (320 pages)
256 levels

Optional Wireless Adapter

Item	Description
Connectivity technology	Wireless
Compliant standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n

^{*2 :} Windows Vista/7/8 only

Item	Description
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data transfer rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES)*1, WPA2-Enterprise (AES)*1
Wi-Fi Protected Setup [®] (WPS) ^{*2}	Push-Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)
Wireless mode	Infrastructure, Ad-hoc, Wi-Fi Direct

^{*1} EAP method supports PEAPv0, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS PAP, and EAP-TTLS CHAP.
*2 WPS 2.0 compliant.